

# Package: deSolve (via r-universe)

October 10, 2024

**Version** 1.40

**Title** Solvers for Initial Value Problems of Differential Equations ('ODE', 'DAE', 'DDE')

**Author** Karline Soetaert [aut]

(<https://orcid.org/0000-0003-4603-7100>), Thomas Petzoldt

[aut, cre] (<https://orcid.org/0000-0002-4951-6468>), R.

Woodrow Setzer [aut] (<https://orcid.org/0000-0002-6709-9186>),

Peter N. Brown [ctb] (files ddaspk.f, dvode.f, zvode.f), George

D. Byrne [ctb] (files dvode.f, zvode.f), Ernst Hairer [ctb]

(files radau5.f, radau5a), Alan C. Hindmarsh [ctb] (files

ddaspk.f, dlsode.f, dvode.f, zvode.f, opdkmain.f, opdka1.f),

Cleve Moler [ctb] (file dlinpck.f), Linda R. Petzold [ctb]

(files ddaspk.f, dlsoda.f), Youcef Saad [ctb] (file dsparsk.f),

Clement W. Ulrich [ctb] (file ddaspk.f)

**Maintainer** Thomas Petzoldt <[thomas.petzoldt@tu-dresden.de](mailto:thomas.petzoldt@tu-dresden.de)>

**Depends** R (>= 3.3.0)

**Imports** methods, graphics, grDevices, stats

**Suggests** scatterplot3d, FME

**Description** Functions that solve initial value problems of a system of first-order ordinary differential equations ('ODE'), of partial differential equations ('PDE'), of differential algebraic equations ('DAE'), and of delay differential equations. The functions provide an interface to the FORTRAN functions 'lsoda', 'lsodar', 'lsode', 'lsodes' of the 'ODEPACK' collection, to the FORTRAN functions 'dvode', 'zvode' and 'daspk' and a C-implementation of solvers of the 'Runge-Kutta' family with fixed or variable time steps. The package contains routines designed for solving 'ODEs' resulting from 1-D, 2-D and 3-D partial differential equations ('PDE') that have been converted to 'ODEs' by numerical differencing.

**License** GPL (>= 2)

**URL** <http://desolve.r-forge.r-project.org/>

**LazyData** yes

**NeedsCompilation** yes  
**Date/Publication** 2023-11-27 23:30:02 UTC  
**Repository** <https://epiverse-connect.r-universe.dev>  
**RemoteUrl** <https://github.com/cran/deSolve>  
**RemoteRef** HEAD  
**RemoteSha** d12b9ad090e0ea848d38f6d7d8ead94c7e6b63b3

## Contents

deSolve-package . . . . .	3
aquaphy . . . . .	5
ccl4data . . . . .	8
ccl4model . . . . .	9
checkDLL . . . . .	12
cleanEventTimes . . . . .	13
daspk . . . . .	15
dede . . . . .	25
diagnostics . . . . .	29
diagnostics.deSolve . . . . .	29
DLLfunc . . . . .	30
DLLres . . . . .	33
events . . . . .	35
forcings . . . . .	40
lsoda . . . . .	43
lsodar . . . . .	50
lsode . . . . .	57
lsodes . . . . .	64
ode . . . . .	72
ode.1D . . . . .	78
ode.2D . . . . .	84
ode.3D . . . . .	90
ode.band . . . . .	94
plot.deSolve . . . . .	97
radau . . . . .	103
rk . . . . .	110
rk4 . . . . .	116
rkMethod . . . . .	120
SCOC . . . . .	124
timelags . . . . .	126
vode . . . . .	130
zvode . . . . .	136

---

deSolve-package	<i>General Solvers for Initial Value Problems of Ordinary Differential Equations (ODE), Partial Differential Equations (PDE), Differential Algebraic Equations (DAE) and delay differential equations (DDE).</i>
-----------------	--

---

## Description

Functions that solve initial value problems of a system of first-order ordinary differential equations (ODE), of partial differential equations (PDE), of differential algebraic equations (DAE) and delay differential equations.

The functions provide an interface to the FORTRAN functions lsoda, lsodar, lsode, lsodes of the ODEPACK collection, to the FORTRAN functions dvode, zvode and daspk, and a C-implementation of solvers of the Runge-Kutta family with fixed or variable time steps.

The package contains routines designed for solving ODEs resulting from 1-D, 2-D and 3-D partial differential equations (PDE) that have been converted to ODEs by numerical differencing. It includes root-finding (or event location) and provides access to lagged variables and derivatives.

The system of differential equations is written as an R function or defined in compiled code that has been dynamically loaded, see package vignette [compiledCode](#) for details. The solvers may be used as part of a modeling package for differential equations, or for parameter estimation using any appropriate modeling tool for non-linear models in R such as [optim](#), [nls](#), [nlm](#) or [nlme](#), or [FME](#).

## Package Vignettes, Examples, Online Resources

- Solving Initial Value Differential Equations in R ([pdf](#), [R code](#))
- Writing Code in Compiled Languages ([pdf](#), [R code](#))
- Examples in R ([code](#)), and in Fortran or C ([doc/dynload](#), [doc/dynload-dede](#))
- deSolve homepage: <https://desolve.r-forge.r-project.org> (Papers, Books, PDFs)
- Mailing list: <mailto:r-sig-dynamic-models@r-project.org>

## Author(s)

Karline Soetaert, Thomas Petzoldt, R. Woodrow Setzer

## References

- Karline Soetaert, Thomas Petzoldt, R. Woodrow Setzer (2010): Solving Differential Equations in R: Package deSolve Journal of Statistical Software, 33(9), 1–25. [doi:10.18637/jss.v033.i09](#)
- Karline Soetaert, Thomas Petzoldt, R. Woodrow Setzer (2010): Solving differential equations in R. The R Journal 2(2), 5-15. [doi:10.32614/RJ2010013](#)
- Karline Soetaert, Thomas Petzoldt (2011): Solving ODEs, DAEs, DDEs and PDEs in R. Journal of Numerical Analysis, Industrial and Applied Mathematics (JNAIAM) 6(1-2), 51-65.
- Karline Soetaert, Jeff Cash, Francesca Mazzia, (2012): Solving Differential Equations in R. Springer, 248 pp.
- Alan C. Hindmarsh (1983): ODEPACK, A Systematized Collection of ODE Solvers, in Scientific Computing, R. S. Stepleman et al. (Eds.), North-Holland, Amsterdam, pp. 55-64.

L. R. Petzold, (1983): A Description of DASSL: A Differential/Algebraic System Solver, in Scientific Computing, R. S. Stepleman et al. (Eds.), North-Holland, Amsterdam, pp. 65-68.

P. N. Brown, G. D. Byrne, A. C. Hindmarsh (1989): VODE: A Variable Coefficient ODE Solver, SIAM J. Sci. Stat. Comput., 10, pp. 1038-1051. doi:10.1137/0910062

See also the references given on the specific help pages of the different methods.

### See Also

[ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,  
[ode.band](#) for solving models with a banded Jacobian,  
[ode.1D](#), [ode.2D](#), [ode.3D](#), for integrating 1-D, 2-D and 3-D models,  
[dede](#) for a general interface to the delay differential equation solvers,  
[lsoda](#), [lsode](#), [lsodes](#), [lsodar](#), [vode](#), for ODE solvers of the Livermore family,  
[daspk](#), for a DAE solver up to index 1, of the Livermore family,  
[radau](#) for integrating DAEs up to index 3 using an implicit Runge-Kutta,  
[rk](#), [rkMethod](#), [rk4](#), [euler](#) for Runge-Kutta solvers,  
[DLLfunc](#), [DLLres](#), for testing model implementations in compiled code,  
[forcings](#), [events](#), for how to implement forcing functions (external variables) and events (sudden changes in state variables),  
[lagvalue](#), [lagderiv](#), for how to get access to lagged values of state variables and derivatives.

### Examples

```
library(deSolve)

## Chaos in the atmosphere
Lorenz <- function(t, state, parameters) {
  with(as.list(c(state, parameters)), {
    dX <- a * X + Y * Z
    dY <- b * (Y - Z)
    dZ <- -X * Y + c * Y - Z
    list(c(dX, dY, dZ))
  })
}

parameters <- c(a = -8/3, b = -10, c = 28)
state <- c(X = 1, Y = 1, Z = 1)
times <- seq(0, 100, by = 0.01)

out <- ode(y = state, times = times, func = Lorenz, parms = parameters)

plot(out)

## add a 3D figure if package scatterplot3D is available
if (require(scatterplot3d))
  scatterplot3d(out[,-1], type = "l")
```

**Description**

A phytoplankton model with uncoupled carbon and nitrogen assimilation as a function of light and Dissolved Inorganic Nitrogen (DIN) concentration.

Algal biomass is described via 3 different state variables:

- low molecular weight carbohydrates (LMW), the product of photosynthesis,
- storage molecules (RESERVE) and
- the biosynthetic and photosynthetic apparatus (PROTEINS).

All algal state variables are expressed in  $\text{mmol C m}^{-3}$ . Only proteins contain nitrogen and chlorophyll, with a fixed stoichiometric ratio. As the relative amount of proteins changes in the algae, so does the N:C and the Chl:C ratio.

An additional state variable, dissolved inorganic nitrogen (DIN) has units of  $\text{mmol N m}^{-3}$ .

The algae grow in a dilution culture (chemostat): there is constant inflow of DIN and outflow of culture water, including DIN and algae, at the same rate.

Two versions of the model are included.

- In the default model, there is a day-night illumination regime, i.e. the light is switched on and off at fixed times (where the sum of illuminated + dark period = 24 hours).
- In another version, the light is imposed as a forcing function data set.

This model is written in FORTRAN.

**Usage**

```
aquaphy(times, y, parms, PAR = NULL, ...)
```

**Arguments**

times	time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of times must be the initial time,
y	the initial (state) values ("DIN", "PROTEIN", "RESERVE", "LMW"), in that order,
parms	vector or list with the aquaphy model parameters; see the example for the order in which these have to be defined.
PAR	a data set of the photosynthetically active radiation (light intensity), if NULL, on-off PAR is used,
...	any other parameters passed to the integrator ode (which solves the model).

## Details

The model is implemented primarily to demonstrate the linking of FORTRAN with R-code.  
The source can be found in the 'doc/examples/dynload' subdirectory of the package.

## Author(s)

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

## References

Lancelot, C., Veth, C. and Mathot, S. (1991). Modelling ice-edge phytoplankton bloom in the Scotia-Weddel sea sector of the Southern Ocean during spring 1988. *Journal of Marine Systems* 2, 333–346.

Soetaert, K. and Herman, P. (2008). A practical guide to ecological modelling. Using R as a simulation platform. Springer.

## See Also

[ccl4model](#), the CCl4 inhalation model.

## Examples

```
## =====
##
## Example 1. PAR an on-off function
##
## =====

## -----
## the model parameters:
## -----

parameters <- c(maxPhotoSynt = 0.125,      # mol C/mol C/hr
                rMortPHY      = 0.001,      # /hr
                alpha         = -0.125/150, # uEinst/m2/s/hr
                pExudation    = 0.0,        # -
                maxProteinSynt = 0.136,     # mol C/mol C/hr
                ksDIN         = 1.0,        # mmol N/m3
                minpLMW       = 0.05,      # mol C/mol C
                maxpLMW       = 0.15,      # mol C/mol C
                minQuotum     = 0.075,     # mol C/mol C
                maxStorage    = 0.23,      # /h
                respirationRate = 0.0001,  # /h
                pResp         = 0.4,       # -
                catabolismRate = 0.06,     # /h
                dilutionRate  = 0.01,     # /h
                rNCProtein    = 0.2,       # mol N/mol C
                inputDIN      = 10.0,     # mmol N/m3
                rChlN         = 1,        # g Chl/mol N
                parMean       = 250.,     # umol Phot/m2/s)
```

```

                                dayLength      = 15.      # hours
                                )

## -----
## The initial conditions
## -----

state <- c(DIN      = 6.,      # mmol N/m3
           PROTEIN = 20.0,    # mmol C/m3
           RESERVE  = 5.0,    # mmol C/m3
           LMW      = 1.0)    # mmol C/m3

## -----
## Running the model
## -----

times <- seq(0, 24*20, 1)

out <- as.data.frame(aquaphy(times, state, parameters))

## -----
## Plotting model output
## -----

par(mfrow = c(2, 2), oma = c(0, 0, 3, 0))
col <- grey(0.9)
ii <- 1:length(out$PAR)

plot(times[ii], out$Chlorophyll[ii], type = "l",
      main = "Chlorophyll", xlab = "time, hours", ylab = "ug/l")
polygon(times[ii], out$PAR[ii]-10, col = col, border = NA); box()
lines(times[ii], out$Chlorophyll[ii], lwd = 2 )

plot (times[ii], out$DIN[ii], type = "l", main = "DIN",
      xlab = "time, hours", ylab = "mmolN/m3")
polygon(times[ii], out$PAR[ii]-10, col = col, border = NA); box()
lines(times[ii], out$DIN[ii], lwd = 2 )

plot (times[ii], out$NCratio[ii], type = "n", main = "NCratio",
      xlab = "time, hours", ylab = "molN/molC")
polygon(times[ii], out$PAR[ii]-10, col = col, border = NA); box()
lines(times[ii], out$NCratio[ii], lwd = 2 )

plot (times[ii], out$PhotoSynthesis[ii], type = "l",
      main = "PhotoSynthesis", xlab = "time, hours",
      ylab = "mmolC/m3/hr")
polygon(times[ii], out$PAR[ii]-10, col = col, border = NA); box()
lines(times[ii], out$PhotoSynthesis[ii], lwd = 2 )

mtext(outer = TRUE, side = 3, "AQUAPHY, PAR= on-off", cex = 1.5)

```

```

## -----
## Summary model output
## -----
t(summary(out))

## =====
##
## Example 2. PAR a forcing function data set
##
## =====

times <- seq(0, 24*20, 1)

## -----
## create the forcing functions
## -----

ftime <- seq(0,500,by=0.5)
parval <- pmax(0,250 + 350*sin(ftime*2*pi/24)+
  (runif(length(ftime))-0.5)*250)
Par <- matrix(nc=2,c(ftime,parval))

state <- c(DIN      = 6.,      # mmol N/m3
           PROTEIN = 20.0,    # mmol C/m3
           RESERVE  = 5.0,    # mmol C/m3
           LMW      = 1.0)    # mmol C/m3

out <- aquaphy(times, state, parameters, Par)

plot(out, which = c("PAR", "Chlorophyll", "DIN", "NCratio"),
      xlab = "time, hours",
      ylab = c("uEinst/m2/s", "ug/l", "mmolN/m3", "molN/molC"))

mtext(outer = TRUE, side = 3, "AQUAPHY, PAR=forcing", cex = 1.5)

# Now all variables plotted in one figure...
plot(out, which = 1:9, type = "l")

par(mfrow = c(1, 1))

```

---

ccl4data

*Closed Chamber Study of CCl4 Metabolism by Rats.*


---

### Description

The results of a closed chamber experiment to determine metabolic parameters for CCl<sub>4</sub> (carbon tetrachloride) in rats.



**Usage**

```
data(cc14data)
```

**Format**

This data frame contains the following columns:

**time** the time (in hours after starting the experiment).

**initconc** initial chamber concentration (ppm).

**animal** this is a repeated measures design; this variable indicates which animal the observation pertains to.

**ChamberConc** chamber concentration at time, in ppm.

**Source**

Evans, et al. 1994 Applications of sensitivity analysis to a physiologically based pharmacokinetic model for carbon tetrachloride in rats. *Toxicology and Applied Pharmacology* **128**: 36 – 44.

**Examples**

```
plot(ChamberConc ~ time, data = ccl4data, xlab = "Time (hours)",
     xlim = range(c(0, ccl4data$time)),
     ylab = "Chamber Concentration (ppm)", log = "y")
ccl4data.avg <- aggregate(ccl4data$ChamberConc,
                        by = ccl4data[c("time", "initconc")], mean)
points(x ~ time, data = ccl4data.avg, pch = 16)
```

---

ccl4model

*The CCl4 Inhalation Model*


---

**Description**

The CCl4 inhalation model implemented in .Fortran

**Usage**

```
ccl4model(times, y, parms, ...)
```

**Arguments**

times	time sequence for which the model has to be integrated.
y	the initial values for the state variables ("AI", "AAM", "AT", "AF", "AL", "CLT" and "AM"), in that order.
parms	vector or list holding the ccl4 model parameters; see the example for the order in which these have to be defined.
...	any other parameters passed to the integrator ode (which solves the model).

## Details

The model is implemented primarily to demonstrate the linking of FORTRAN with R-code.  
The source can be found in the ‘/doc/examples/dynload’ subdirectory of the package.

## Author(s)

R. Woodrow Setzer <setzer.woodrow@epa.gov>

## See Also

Try demo(CCL4model) for how this model has been fitted to the dataset [ccl4data](#),  
[aquaphy](#), another FORTRAN model, describing growth in aquatic phytoplankton.

## Examples

```
## =====
## Parameter values
## =====

Pm <- c(
  ## Physiological parameters
  BW = 0.182, # Body weight (kg)
  QP = 4.0 , # Alveolar ventilation rate (hr^-1)
  QC = 4.0 , # Cardiac output (hr^-1)
  VFC = 0.08, # Fraction fat tissue (kg/(kg/BW))
  VLC = 0.04, # Fraction liver tissue (kg/(kg/BW))
  VMC = 0.74, # Fraction of muscle tissue (kg/(kg/BW))
  QFC = 0.05, # Fractional blood flow to fat ((hr^-1)/QC)
  QLC = 0.15, # Fractional blood flow to liver ((hr^-1)/QC)
  QMC = 0.32, # Fractional blood flow to muscle ((hr^-1)/QC)

  ## Chemical specific parameters for chemical
  PLA = 16.17, # Liver/air partition coefficient
  PFA = 281.48, # Fat/air partition coefficient
  PMA = 13.3, # Muscle/air partition coefficient
  PTA = 16.17, # Viscera/air partition coefficient
  PB = 5.487, # Blood/air partition coefficient
  MW = 153.8, # Molecular weight (g/mol)
  VMAX = 0.04321671, # Max. velocity of metabolism (mg/hr) -calibrated
  KM = 0.4027255, # Michaelis-Menten constant (mg/l) -calibrated

  ## Parameters for simulated experiment
  CONC = 1000, # Inhaled concentration
  KL = 0.02, # Loss rate from empty chamber /hr
  RATS = 1.0, # Number of rats enclosed in chamber
  VCHC = 3.8 # Volume of closed chamber (l)
)

## =====
## State variables
## =====
```

```

y <- c(
  AI = 21, # total mass , mg
  AAM = 0,
  AT = 0,
  AF = 0,
  AL = 0,
  CLT = 0, # area under the conc.-time curve in the liver
  AM = 0 # the amount metabolized (AM)
)

## =====
## Model application
## =====

times <- seq(0, 6, by = 0.1)

## initial inhaled concentration-calibrated
conc <- c(26.496, 90.197, 245.15, 951.46)

plot(ChamberConc ~ time, data = ccl4data, xlab = "Time (hours)",
     xlim = range(c(0, ccl4data$time)),
     ylab = "Chamber Concentration (ppm)",
     log = "y", main = "ccl4model")

for (cc in conc) {
  Pm["CONC"] <- cc

  VCH <- Pm[["VCHC"]] - Pm[["RATS"]] * Pm[["BW"]]
  AI0 <- VCH * Pm[["CONC"]] * Pm[["MW"]]/24450
  y["AI"] <- AI0

  ## run the model:
  out <- as.data.frame(ccl4model(times, y, Pm))
  lines(out$time, out$CP, lwd = 2)
}

legend("topright", lty = c(NA, 1), pch = c(1, NA), lwd = c(NA, 2),
      legend = c("data", "model"))

## =====
## An example with tracer injection
## =====
## every day, a conc of 2 is added to AI.
## 1. implemented as a data.frame
eventdat <- data.frame(var = rep("AI", 6), time = 1:6 ,
  value = rep(1, 6), method = rep("add", 6))

eventdat

print(system.time(
  out <-ccl4model(times, y, Pm, events = list(data = eventdat))
))

```

```

plot(out, mfrow = c(3, 4), type = "l", lwd = 2)

# 2. implemented as a function in a DLL!
print(system.time(
out2 <- cc14model(times, y, Pm, events = list(func = "eventfun", time = 1:6))
))

plot(out2, mfrow=c(3, 4), type = "l", lwd = 2)

```

---

checkDLL

*Check shared library (DLL/.so) of a compiled model.*


---

### Description

Check shared library (DLL/.so) of a compiled model and create a list of symbols.

### Usage

```
checkDLL(func, jacfunc, dllname, initfunc, verbose, nout, outnames, JT = 1)
```

### Arguments

func	character: name of the derivative function.
jacfunc	an R function, that computes the Jacobian of the system of differential equations $\partial y_i / \partial y_j$ , or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the Jacobian.
dllname	a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains all the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in func and jacfunc.
initfunc	the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in 'dllname'. See package vignette "compiledCode".
verbose	reserved for future extensions.
nout	only used if dllname is specified and the model is defined in compiled code: the number of output variables calculated in the compiled function func, present in the shared library. Note: it is not automatically checked whether this is indeed the number of output variables calculated in the dll - you have to perform this check in the code.
outnames	only used if 'dllname' is specified and nout > 0: the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function func, present in the shared library. These names will be used to label the output matrix.
JT	integer specifying the type of the Jacobian. The default value of 1 must be set to 2 for solver lsodes if 'func' is specified in a DLL or inline compiled and if a 'jacfunc' is provided.

**Details**

The function checkDLL is normally called internally by the solver functions. It can be used to avoid overhead, when a small compiled model with a low number of integration steps is repeatedly called. The feature is currently only available for the lsoda solver.

**Value**

List of class deSolve.symbols with:

ModelInit	pointer to the init function of the DLL (class "externalptr").
Func	pointer to the derivative function in the DLL (class "externalptr").
JacFunc	pointer to the Jacobi function in the DLL (class "externalptr").
Nglob	number of output variables calculated in the compiled function.
Nmtot	list of names of derivatives and output variables.

**See Also**

[lsoda](#)

**Examples**

```
## Not run:
symbols <- checkDLL(func = "derivs", jacfunc = NULL, dllname = "lorenz",
  initfunc = "initmod", verbose = TRUE, nout = 0,
  outnames = NULL, JT = 1)

## End(Not run)
```

---

cleanEventTimes	<i>Find Nearest Event for Each Time Step and Clean Time Steps to Avoid Doubles</i>
-----------------	--

---

**Description**

These functions can be used for checking time steps and events used by ode solver functions. They are normally called internally within the solvers.

**Usage**

```
nearestEvent(times, eventtimes)
cleanEventTimes(times, eventtimes, eps = .Machine$double.eps * 10)
```

**Arguments**

<code>times</code>	the vector of output times,
<code>eventtimes</code>	a vector with the event times,
<code>eps</code>	relative tolerance value below which two numbers are assumed to be numerically equal.

**Details**

In floating point arithmetics, problems can occur if values have to be compared for 'equality' but are only close to each other and not exactly the same.

The utility functions can be used to add all `eventtimes` to the output `times` vector, but without including times that are very close to an event.

This means that all values of `eventtimes` are contained but only the subset of `times` that have no close neighbors in `eventtimes`.

These checks are normally performed internally by the integration solvers.

**Value**

`nearestEvent` returns a vector with the closest events for each time step and

`cleanEventTimes` returns a vector with the output times without all those that are 'very close' to an event.

**Author(s)**

Thomas Petzoldt

**See Also**

[events](#)

**Examples**

```
events <- sort(c(0, 2, 3, 4 + 1e-10, 5, 7 - 1e-10,
               7 + 6e-15, 7.5, 9, 24.9999, 25, 80, 1001, 1e300))
times  <- sort(c(0, 1:7, 4.5, 6.75, 7.5, 9.2, 9.0001, 25, 879, 1e3, 1e300+5))

nearest <- nearestEvent(times, events)
data.frame(times=times, nearest = nearest)

## typical usage: include all events in times after removing values that
## are numerically close together, events have priority
times
unique_times <- cleanEventTimes(times, events)
newtimes <- sort(c(unique_times, events))
newtimes
```

---

daspk

---

*Solver for Differential Algebraic Equations (DAE)*


---

## Description

Solves either:

- a system of ordinary differential equations (ODE) of the form

$$y' = f(t, y, \dots)$$

or

- a system of differential algebraic equations (DAE) of the form

$$F(t, y, y') = 0$$

or

- a system of linearly implicit DAES in the form

$$My' = f(t, y)$$

using a combination of backward differentiation formula (BDF) and a direct linear system solution method (dense or banded).

The R function `daspk` provides an interface to the FORTRAN DAE solver of the same name, written by Linda R. Petzold, Peter N. Brown, Alan C. Hindmarsh and Clement W. Ulrich.

The system of DE's is written as an R function (which may, of course, use `.C`, `.Fortran`, `.Call`, etc., to call foreign code) or be defined in compiled code that has been dynamically loaded.

## Usage

```
daspk(y, times, func = NULL, parms, nind = c(length(y), 0, 0),
      dy = NULL, res = NULL, nalg = 0,
      rtol = 1e-6, atol = 1e-6, jacfunc = NULL,
      jacres = NULL, jactype = "fullint", mass = NULL, estini = NULL,
      verbose = FALSE, tcrit = NULL, hmin = 0, hmax = NULL,
      hini = 0, ynames = TRUE, maxord = 5, bandup = NULL,
      banddown = NULL, maxsteps = 5000, dllname = NULL,
      initfunc = dllname, initpar = parms, rpar = NULL,
      ipar = NULL, nout = 0, outnames = NULL,
      forcings=NULL, initforc = NULL, fcontrol=NULL,
      events = NULL, lags = NULL, ...)
```

## Arguments

`y` the initial (state) values for the DE system. If `y` has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.

times	time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of times must be the initial time; if only one step is to be taken; set times = NULL.
func	<p>to be used if the model is an ODE, or a DAE written in linearly implicit form (<math>M y' = f(t, y)</math>). func should be an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the <i>model definition</i>) at time t.</p> <p>func must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code>.</p> <p>t is the current time point in the integration, y is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values y has a names attribute, the names will be available inside func, unless ynames is FALSE. parms is a vector or list of parameters. ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.</p> <p>The return value of func should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of y with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in times. The derivatives should be specified in the same order as the specification of the state variables y.</p> <p>Note that it is not possible to define func as a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library. Use res instead.</p>
parms	vector or list of parameters used in func, jacfunc, or res
nind	<p>if a DAE system: a three-valued vector with the number of variables of index 1, 2, 3 respectively. The equations must be defined such that the index 1 variables precede the index 2 variables which in turn precede the index 3 variables. The sum of the variables of different index should equal N, the total number of variables. Note that this has been added for consistency with <a href="#">radau</a>. If used, then the variables are weighed differently than in the original daspk code, i.e. index 2 variables are scaled with 1/h, index 3 variables are scaled with 1/h<sup>2</sup>. In some cases this allows daspk to solve index 2 or index 3 problems.</p>
dy	the initial derivatives of the state variables of the DE system. Ignored if an ODE.
res	<p>if a DAE system: either an R-function that computes the residual function <math>F(t, y, y')</math> of the DAE system (the model definition) at time t, or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library.</p> <p>If res is a user-supplied R-function, it must be defined as: <code>res &lt;- function(t, y, dy, parms, ...)</code>.</p> <p>Here t is the current time point in the integration, y is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system, dy are the corresponding derivatives. If the initial y or dy have a names attribute, the names will be available inside res, unless ynames is FALSE. parms is a vector of parameters.</p> <p>The return value of res should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the residuals of the DAE system, i.e. <math>\delta = F(t, y, y')</math>, and whose next elements contain output variables that are required at each point in times.</p> <p>If res is a string, then dllname must give the name of the shared library (without extension) which must be loaded before <code>daspk()</code> is called (see package vignette "compiledCode" for more information).</p>
nalg	<p>if a DAE system: the number of algebraic equations (equations not involving derivatives). Algebraic equations should always be the last, i.e. preceded by the differential equations.</p> <p>Only used if <code>estini = 1</code>.</p>



rtol	relative error tolerance, either a scalar or a vector, one value for each y,
atol	absolute error tolerance, either a scalar or a vector, one value for each y.
jacfunc	<p>if not NULL, an R function that computes the Jacobian of the system of differential equations. Only used in case the system is an ODE (<math>y' = f(t, y)</math>), specified by func. The R calling sequence for jacfunc is identical to that of func.</p> <p>If the Jacobian is a full matrix, jacfunc should return a matrix <math>\partial y' / \partial y</math>, where the <i>i</i>th row contains the derivative of <math>dy_i / dt</math> with respect to <math>y_j</math>, or a vector containing the matrix elements by columns (the way R and FORTRAN store matrices). If the Jacobian is banded, jacfunc should return a matrix containing only the nonzero bands of the Jacobian, rotated row-wise. See first example of lode.</p>
jacres	<p>jacres and not jacfunc should be used if the system is specified by the residual function <math>F(t, y, y')</math>, i.e. jacres is used in conjunction with res.</p> <p>If jacres is an R-function, the calling sequence for jacres is identical to that of res, but with extra parameter cj. Thus it should be called as: jacres = func(t, y, dy, parms, cj, ...). Here t is the current time point in the integration, y is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system, <math>y'</math> are the corresponding derivatives and cj is a scalar, which is normally proportional to the inverse of the stepsize. If the initial y or dy have a names attribute, the names will be available inside jacres, unless ynames is FALSE. parms is a vector of parameters (which may have a names attribute).</p> <p>If the Jacobian is a full matrix, jacres should return the matrix <math>dG/dy + c_j \cdot dG/dy'</math>, where the <i>i</i>th row is the sum of the derivatives of <math>G_i</math> with respect to <math>y_j</math> and the scaled derivatives of <math>G_i</math> with respect to <math>y'_j</math>.</p> <p>If the Jacobian is banded, jacres should return only the nonzero bands of the Jacobian, rotated rowwise. See details for the calling sequence when jacres is a string.</p>
jactype	the structure of the Jacobian, one of "fullint", "fullusr", "bandusr" or "bandint" - either full or banded and estimated internally or by the user.
mass	<p>the mass matrix. If not NULL, the problem is a linearly implicit DAE and defined as <math>M dy/dt = f(t, y)</math>. The mass-matrix <math>M</math> should be of dimension <math>n * n</math> where <math>n</math> is the number of <math>y</math>-values.</p> <p>If mass=NULL then the model is either an ODE or a DAE, specified with res</p>
estini	only if a DAE system, and if initial values of y and dy are not consistent (i.e. $F(t, y, dy) \neq 0$ ), setting estini = 1 or 2, will solve for them. If estini = 1: dy and the algebraic variables are estimated from y; in this case, the number of algebraic equations must be given (nalg). If estini = 2: y will be estimated from dy.
verbose	if TRUE: full output to the screen, e.g. will print the diagnostics of the integration - see details.
tcrit	the FORTRAN routine daspk overshoots its targets (times points in the vector times), and interpolates values for the desired time points. If there is a time beyond which integration should not proceed (perhaps because of a singularity), that should be provided in tcrit.
hmin	an optional minimum value of the integration stepsize. In special situations this parameter may speed up computations with the cost of precision. Don't use hmin if you don't know why!

hmax	an optional maximum value of the integration stepsize. If not specified, hmax is set to the largest difference in times, to avoid that the simulation possibly ignores short-term events. If 0, no maximal size is specified.
hini	initial step size to be attempted; if 0, the initial step size is determined by the solver
yname	logical, if FALSE, names of state variables are not passed to function func; this may speed up the simulation especially for large models.
maxord	the maximum order to be allowed. Reduce maxord to save storage space ( $\leq 5$ )
bandup	number of non-zero bands above the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded (and jactype one of "bandint", "bandusr")
banddown	number of non-zero bands below the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded (and jactype one of "bandint", "bandusr")
maxsteps	maximal number of steps per output interval taken by the solver; will be recalculated to be at least 500 and a multiple of 500; if verbose is TRUE the solver will give a warning if more than 500 steps are taken, but it will continue till maxsteps steps. (Note this warning was always given in deSolve versions < 1.10.3).
dllname	a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains all the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in res and jacres. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initfunc	if not NULL, the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in 'dllname'. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initpar	only when 'dllname' is specified and an initialisation function initfunc is in the dll: the parameters passed to the initialiser, to initialise the common blocks (FORTRAN) or global variables (C, C++).
rpar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with double precision values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by res and jacres.
ipar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with integer values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by res and jacres.
nout	only used if 'dllname' is specified and the model is defined in compiled code: the number of output variables calculated in the compiled function res, present in the shared library. Note: it is not automatically checked whether this is indeed the number of output variables calculated in the dll - you have to perform this check in the code - See package vignette "compiledCode".
outnames	only used if 'dllname' is specified and nout > 0: the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function res, present in the shared library. These names will be used to label the output matrix.
forcings	only used if 'dllname' is specified: a list with the forcing function data sets, each present as a two-columned matrix, with (time,value); interpolation outside the interval [min(times), max(times)] is done by taking the value at the closest data extreme. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
initforc	if not NULL, the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in 'dllname'. It MUST be present if forcings has been given a value. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".

fcontrol	A list of control parameters for the forcing functions. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or vignette <code>compiledCode</code> .
events	A matrix or data frame that specifies events, i.e. when the value of a state variable is suddenly changed. See <a href="#">events</a> for more information.
lags	A list that specifies timelags, i.e. the number of steps that has to be kept. To be used for delay differential equations. See <a href="#">timelags</a> , <a href="#">dede</a> for more information.
...	additional arguments passed to <code>func</code> , <code>jacfunc</code> , <code>res</code> and <code>jacres</code> , allowing this to be a generic function.

## Details

The `daspk` solver uses the backward differentiation formulas of orders one through five (specified with `maxord`) to solve either:

- an ODE system of the form

$$y' = f(t, y, \dots)$$

or

- a DAE system of the form

$$y' = Mf(t, y, \dots)$$

or

- a DAE system of the form

$$F(t, y, y') = 0$$

. The index of the DAE should be preferable  $\leq 1$ .

ODEs are specified using argument `func`, DAEs are specified using argument `res`.

If a DAE system, Values for  $y$  and  $y'$  (argument `dy`) at the initial time must be given as input. Ideally, these values should be consistent, that is, if  $t, y, y'$  are the given initial values, they should satisfy  $F(t, y, y') = 0$ .

However, if consistent values are not known, in many cases `daspk` can solve for them: when `estini = 1`,  $y'$  and algebraic variables (their number specified with `nalg`) will be estimated, when `estini = 2`,  $y$  will be estimated.

The form of the **Jacobian** can be specified by `jactype`. This is one of:

**jactype = "fullint"**: a full Jacobian, calculated internally by `daspk`, the default,

**jactype = "fullusr"**: a full Jacobian, specified by user function `jacfunc` or `jacres`,

**jactype = "bandusr"**: a banded Jacobian, specified by user function `jacfunc` or `jacres`; the size of the bands specified by `bandup` and `banddown`,

**jactype = "bandint"**: a banded Jacobian, calculated by `daspk`; the size of the bands specified by `bandup` and `banddown`.

If `jactype = "fullusr"` or `"bandusr"` then the user must supply a subroutine `jacfunc`.

If `jactype = "fullusr"` or `"bandusr"` then the user must supply a subroutine `jacfunc` or `jacres`.

The input parameters `rtol`, and `atol` determine the **error control** performed by the solver. If the request for precision exceeds the capabilities of the machine, `daspk` will return an error code. See [lsoda](#) for details.

When the index of the variables is specified (argument `nind`), and higher index variables are present, then the equations are scaled such that equations corresponding to index 2 variables are multiplied with  $1/h$ , for index 3 they are multiplied with  $1/h^2$ , where  $h$  is the time step. This is not in the standard DASPCK code, but has been added for consistency with solver [radau](#). Because of this, `daspk` can solve certain index 2 or index 3 problems.

**res** and **jacres** may be defined in compiled C or FORTRAN code, as well as in an R-function. See package vignette "compiledCode" for details. Examples in FORTRAN are in the 'dynload' subdirectory of the `deSolve` package directory.

The diagnostics of the integration can be printed to screen by calling [diagnostics](#). If `verbose = TRUE`, the diagnostics will be written to the screen at the end of the integration.

See vignette("deSolve") for an explanation of each element in the vectors containing the diagnostic properties and how to directly access them.

**Models** may be defined in compiled C or FORTRAN code, as well as in an R-function. See package vignette "compiledCode" for details.

More information about models defined in compiled code is in the package vignette ("compiled-Code"); information about linking forcing functions to compiled code is in [forcings](#).

Examples in both C and FORTRAN are in the 'dynload' subdirectory of the `deSolve` package directory.

## Value

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the next elements of the return from `func` or `res`, plus an additional column (the first) for the time value. There will be one row for each element in `times` unless the FORTRAN routine 'daspk' returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

## Note

In this version, the Krylov method is not (yet) supported.

From `deSolve` version 1.10.4 and above, the following changes were made

1. the argument list to `daspk` now also includes `nind`, the index of each variable. This is used to scale the variables, such that `daspk` in R can also solve certain index 2 or index 3 problems, which the original Fortran version may not be able to solve.
2. the default of `atol` was changed from  $1e-8$  to  $1e-6$ , to be consistent with the other solvers.
3. the multiple warnings from `daspk` when the number of steps exceed 500 were toggled off unless `verbose` is `TRUE`

## Author(s)

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

## References

L. R. Petzold, A Description of DASSL: A Differential/Algebraic System Solver, in Scientific Computing, R. S. Stepleman et al. (Eds.), North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1983, pp. 65-68.

K. E. Brenan, S. L. Campbell, and L. R. Petzold, Numerical Solution of Initial-Value Problems in Differential-Algebraic Equations, Elsevier, New York, 1989.

P. N. Brown and A. C. Hindmarsh, Reduced Storage Matrix Methods in Stiff ODE Systems, J. Applied Mathematics and Computation, 31 (1989), pp. 40-91. doi:10.1016/00963003(89)901100

P. N. Brown, A. C. Hindmarsh, and L. R. Petzold, Using Krylov Methods in the Solution of Large-Scale Differential-Algebraic Systems, SIAM J. Sci. Comp., 15 (1994), pp. 1467-1488. doi:10.1137/0915088

P. N. Brown, A. C. Hindmarsh, and L. R. Petzold, Consistent Initial Condition Calculation for Differential-Algebraic Systems, LLNL Report UCRL-JC-122175, August 1995; submitted to SIAM J. Sci. Comp.

Netlib: <https://netlib.org>

## See Also

- [radau](#) for integrating DAEs up to index 3,
- [rk](#),
- [rk4](#) and [euler](#) for Runge-Kutta integrators.
- [lsoda](#), [lsode](#), [lsodes](#), [lsodar](#), [vode](#), for other solvers of the Livermore family,
- [ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,
- [ode.band](#) for solving models with a banded Jacobian,
- [ode.1D](#) for integrating 1-D models,
- [ode.2D](#) for integrating 2-D models,
- [ode.3D](#) for integrating 3-D models,

[diagnostics](#) to print diagnostic messages.

## Examples

```
## =====
## Coupled chemical reactions including an equilibrium
## modeled as (1) an ODE and (2) as a DAE
##
## The model describes three chemical species A,B,D:
## subjected to equilibrium reaction D <-> A + B
## D is produced at a constant rate, prod
## B is consumed at 1s-t order rate, r
## Chemical problem formulation 1: ODE
## =====

## Dissociation constant
K <- 1

## parameters
```

```

pars <- c(
  ka = 1e6,    # forward rate
  r = 1,
  prod = 0.1)

Fun_ODE <- function (t, y, pars)
{
  with (as.list(c(y, pars)), {
    ra <- ka*D      # forward rate
    rb <- ka/K *A*B # backward rate

    ## rates of changes
    dD <- -ra + rb + prod
    dA <- ra - rb
    dB <- ra - rb - r*B
    return(list(dy = c(dA, dB, dD),
                  CONC = A+B+D))
  })
}

## =====
## Chemical problem formulation 2: DAE
## 1. get rid of the fast reactions ra and rb by taking
## linear combinations : dD+dA = prod (res1) and
##                      dB-dA = -r*B (res2)
## 2. In addition, the equilibrium condition (eq) reads:
## as ra = rb : ka*D = ka/K*A*B = >      K*D = A*B
## =====

Res_DAE <- function (t, y, yprime, pars)
{
  with (as.list(c(y, yprime, pars)), {

    ## residuals of lumped rates of changes
    res1 <- -dD - dA + prod
    res2 <- -dB + dA - r*B

    ## and the equilibrium equation
    eq <- K*D - A*B

    return(list(c(res1, res2, eq),
                  CONC = A+B+D))
  })
}

## =====
## Chemical problem formulation 3: Mass * Func
## Based on the DAE formulation
## =====

Mass_FUN <- function (t, y, pars) {
  with (as.list(c(y, pars)), {

```

```

## as above, but without the
f1 <- prod
f2 <- - r*B

## and the equilibrium equation
f3 <- K*D - A*B

return(list(c(f1, f2, f3),
            CONC = A+B+D))
})
}
Mass <- matrix(nrow = 3, ncol = 3, byrow = TRUE,
              data=c(1, 0, 1,      # dA + 0 + dB
                    -1, 1, 0,     # -dA + dB +0
                    0, 0, 0))     # algebraic

times <- seq(0, 100, by = 2)

## Initial conc; D is in equilibrium with A,B
y <- c(A = 2, B = 3, D = 2*3/K)

## ODE model solved with daspk
ODE <- daspk(y = y, times = times, func = Fun_ODE,
            parms = pars, atol = 1e-10, rtol = 1e-10)

## Initial rate of change
dy <- c(dA = 0, dB = 0, dD = 0)

## DAE model solved with daspk
DAE <- daspk(y = y, dy = dy, times = times,
            res = Res_DAE, parms = pars, atol = 1e-10, rtol = 1e-10)

MASS<- daspk(y=y, times=times, func = Mass_FUN, parms = pars, mass = Mass)

## =====
## plotting output
## =====

plot(ODE, DAE, xlab = "time", ylab = "conc", type = c("l", "p"),
     pch = c(NA, 1))

legend("bottomright", lty = c(1, NA), pch = c(NA, 1),
      col = c("black", "red"), legend = c("ODE", "DAE"))

# difference between both implementations:
max(abs(ODE-DAE))

## =====
## same DAE model, now with the Jacobian
## =====
jacres_DAE <- function (t, y, yprime, pars, cj)
{

```

```

    with (as.list(c(y, yprime, pars)), {
##   res1 = -dD - dA + prod
      PD[1,1] <- -1*cj      # d(res1)/d(A)-cj*d(res1)/d(dA)
      PD[1,2] <- 0         # d(res1)/d(B)-cj*d(res1)/d(dB)
      PD[1,3] <- -1*cj      # d(res1)/d(D)-cj*d(res1)/d(dD)
##   res2 = -dB + dA - r*B
      PD[2,1] <- 1*cj
      PD[2,2] <- -r -1*cj
      PD[2,3] <- 0
##   eq = K*D - A*B
      PD[3,1] <- -B
      PD[3,2] <- -A
      PD[3,3] <- K
      return(PD)
    })
}

PD <- matrix(ncol = 3, nrow = 3, 0)

DAE2 <- daspk(y = y, dy = dy, times = times,
              res = Res_DAE, jacres = jacres_DAE, jactype = "fullusr",
              parms = pars, atol = 1e-10, rtol = 1e-10)

max(abs(DAE-DAE2))

## See \dynload subdirectory for a FORTRAN implementation of this model

## =====
## The chemical model as a DLL, with production a forcing function
## =====
times <- seq(0, 100, by = 2)

pars <- c(K = 1, ka = 1e6, r = 1)

## Initial conc; D is in equilibrium with A,B
y <- c(A = 2, B = 3, D = as.double(2*3/pars["K"]))

## Initial rate of change
dy <- c(dA = 0, dB = 0, dD = 0)

# production increases with time
prod <- matrix(ncol = 2,
               data = c(seq(0, 100, by = 10), 0.1*(1+runif(11)*1)))

ODE_dll <- daspk(y = y, dy = dy, times = times, res = "chemres",
                dllname = "deSolve", initfunc = "initparms",
                initforc = "initforcs", parms = pars, forcings = prod,
                atol = 1e-10, rtol = 1e-10, nout = 2,
                outnames = c("CONC", "Prod"))

plot(ODE_dll, which = c("Prod", "D"), xlab = "time",
     ylab = c("/day", "conc"), main = c("production rate", "D"))

```



---

dede *General Solver for Delay Differential Equations.*

---

### Description

Function dede is a general solver for delay differential equations, i.e. equations where the derivative depends on past values of the state variables or their derivatives.

### Usage

```
dede(y, times, func=NULL, parms,
     method = c("lsoda", "lsode", "lsodes", "lsodar", "vode",
               "daspk", "bdf", "adams", "impAdams", "radau"), control = NULL, ...)
```

### Arguments

- |         |   |
|---------|---|
| y       | the initial (state) values for the DE system, a vector. If y has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.   |
| times   | time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of times must be the initial time.  |
| func    | <p>an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the model definition) at time <math>t</math>.</p> <p>func must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code>. <math>t</math> is the current time point in the integration, <math>y</math> is the current estimate of the variables in the DE system. If the initial values <math>y</math> has a names attribute, the names will be available inside func. parms is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.</p> <p>The return value of func should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of <math>y</math> with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in times. The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables <math>y</math>.</p> <p>If method "daspk" is used, then func can be NULL, in which case res should be used.</p> |
| parms   | parameters passed to func.  |
| method  | the integrator to use, either a string ("lsoda", "lsode", "lsodes", "lsodar", "vode", "daspk", "bdf", "adams", "impAdams", "radau") or a function that performs the integration. The default integrator used is <code>lsoda</code> .  |
| control | a list that can supply (1) the size of the history array, as <code>control\$mxhist</code> ; the default is 1e4 and (2) how to interpolate, as <code>control\$interpol</code> , where 1 is hermitian interpolation, 2 is variable order interpolation, using the Nordsieck history array. Only for the two Adams methods is the second option recommended.   |
| ...     | additional arguments passed to the integrator.  |

## Details

Functions [lagvalue](#) and [lagderiv](#) are to be used with dede as they provide access to past (lagged) values of state variables and derivatives. The number of past values that are to be stored in a history matrix, can be specified in `control$mxhist`. The default value (if unspecified) is 1e4.

Cubic Hermite interpolation is used by default to obtain an accurate interpolant at the requested lagged time. For methods `adams`, `impAdams`, a more accurate interpolation method can be triggered by setting `control$interpol = 2`.

dede does not deal explicitly with propagated derivative discontinuities, but relies on the integrator to control the stepsize in the region of a discontinuity.

dede does not include methods to deal with delays that are smaller than the stepsize, although in some cases it may be possible to solve such models.

For these reasons, it can only solve rather simple delay differential equations.

When used together with integrator `lsodar`, or `lsode`, `dde` can simultaneously locate a root, and trigger an event. See last example.

## Value

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the second element of the return from `func`, plus an additional column (the first) for the time value. There will be one row for each element in `times` unless the integrator returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

## Author(s)

Karline Soetaert <[karline.soetaert@nioz.nl](mailto:karline.soetaert@nioz.nl)>

## See Also

[lagvalue](#), [lagderiv](#), for how to specify lagged variables and derivatives.

## Examples

```
## =====
## A simple delay differential equation
## dy(t) = -y(t-1) ; y(t<0)=1
## =====

##-----
## the derivative function
##-----
derivs <- function(t, y, parms) {
  if (t < 1)
    dy <- -1
  else
    dy <- - lagvalue(t - 1)
  list(c(dy))
}
```

```

##-----
## initial values and times
##-----
yinit <- 1
times <- seq(0, 30, 0.1)

##-----
## solve the model
##-----
yout <- dede(y = yinit, times = times, func = derivs, parms = NULL)

##-----
## display, plot results
##-----
plot(yout, type = "l", lwd = 2, main = "dy/dt = -y(t-1)")

## =====
## The infectuous disease model of Hairer; two lags.
## example 4 from Shampine and Thompson, 2000
## solving delay differential equations with dde23
## =====

##-----
## the derivative function
##-----
derivs <- function(t,y,parms) {
  if (t < 1)
    lag1 <- 0.1
  else
    lag1 <- lagvalue(t - 1,2)
  if (t < 10)
    lag10 <- 0.1
  else
    lag10 <- lagvalue(t - 10,2)

  dy1 <- -y[1] * lag1 + lag10
  dy2 <- y[1] * lag1 - y[2]
  dy3 <- y[2] - lag10
  list(c(dy1, dy2, dy3))
}

##-----
## initial values and times
##-----
yinit <- c(5, 0.1, 1)
times <- seq(0, 40, by = 0.1)

##-----
## solve the model
##-----
system.time(
  yout <- dede(y = yinit, times = times, func = derivs, parms = NULL)
)

```

```

##-----
## display, plot results
##-----
matplot(yout[,1], yout[,-1], type = "l", lwd = 2, lty = 1,
        main = "Infectuous disease - Hairer")

## =====
## time lags + EVENTS triggered by a root function
## The two-wheeled suitcase model
## example 8 from Shampine and Thompson, 2000
## solving delay differential equations with dde23
## =====

##-----
## the derivative function
##-----
derivs <- function(t, y, parms) {
  if (t < tau)
    lag <- 0
  else
    lag <- lagvalue(t - tau)

  dy1 <- y[2]
  dy2 <- -sign(y[1]) * gam * cos(y[1]) +
          sin(y[1]) - bet * lag[1] + A * sin(omega * t + mu)
  list(c(dy1, dy2))
}

## root and event function
root <- function(t,y,parms) ifelse(t>0, return(y), return(1))
event <- function(t,y,parms) return(c(y[1], y[2]*0.931))

gam = 0.248; bet = 1; tau = 0.1; A = 0.75
omega = 1.37; mu = asin(gam/A)

##-----
## initial values and times
##-----
yinit <- c(y = 0, dy = 0)
times <- seq(0, 12, len = 1000)

##-----
## solve the model
##-----
## Note: use a solver that supports both root finding and events,
##       e.g. lsodar, lsode, lsoda, adams, bdf
yout <- dede(y = yinit, times = times, func = derivs, parms = NULL,
            method = "lsodar", rootfun = root, events = list(func = event, root = TRUE))

##-----
## display, plot results
##-----

```

```
plot(yout, which = 1, type = "l", lwd = 2, main = "suitcase model", mfrow = c(1,2))
plot(yout[,2], yout[,3], xlab = "y", ylab = "dy", type = "l", lwd = 2)
```

---

diagnostics

*Print Diagnostic Characteristics of Solvers*


---

### Description

Prints several diagnostics of the simulation to the screen, e.g. number of steps taken, the last step size, ...

### Usage

```
diagnostics(obj, ...)
## Default S3 method:
diagnostics(obj, ...)
```

### Arguments

`obj` is an output data structure produced by one of the solver routines.  
`...` optional arguments allowing to extend diagnostics as a generic function.

### Details

Detailed information about the success of a simulation is printed, if a diagnostics function exists for a specific solver routine. A warning is printed, if no class-specific diagnostics exists.

Please consult the class-specific help page for details.

### See Also

[diagnostics.deSolve](#) for diagnostics of differential equation solvers.

---

diagnostics.deSolve

*Print Diagnostic Characteristics of ODE and DAE Solvers*


---

### Description

Prints several diagnostics of the simulation to the screen, e.g. number of steps taken, the last step size, ...

### Usage

```
## S3 method for class 'deSolve'
diagnostics(obj, Full = FALSE, ...)
```

**Arguments**

obj is the output matrix as produced by one of the integration routines.

Full when TRUE then all messages will be printed, including the ones that are not relevant for the solver. If FALSE, then only the relevant messages will be printed.

... optional arguments allowing to extend diagnostics as a generic function.

**Details**

When the integration output is saved as a `data.frame`, then the required attributes are lost and method `diagnostics` will not work anymore.

**Value**

The integer and real vector with diagnostic values; for function `lsodar` also the root information.

See tables 2 and 3 in `vignette("deSolve")` for what these vectors contain.

Note: the number of function evaluations are *\*without\** the extra calls performed to generate the ordinary output variables (if present).

**Examples**

```
## The famous Lorenz equations: chaos in the earth's atmosphere
## Lorenz 1963. J. Atmos. Sci. 20, 130-141.
```

```
chaos <- function(t, state, parameters) {
  with(as.list(c(state)), {
    dx <- -8/3 * x + y * z
    dy <- -10 * (y - z)
    dz <- -x * y + 28 * y - z

    list(c(dx, dy, dz))
  })
}
```

```
state <- c(x = 1, y = 1, z = 1)
times <- seq(0, 50, 0.01)
out <- vode(state, times, chaos, 0)
pairs(out, pch = ".")
diagnostics(out)
```

---

DLLfunc

*Evaluates a Derivative Function Represented in a DLL*


---

**Description**

Calls a function, defined in a compiled language as a DLL

**Usage**

```
DLLfunc(func, times, y, parms, dllname,
        initfunc = dllname, rpar = NULL, ipar = NULL, nout = 0,
        outnames = NULL, forcings = NULL, initforc = NULL,
        fcontrol = NULL)
```

**Arguments**

func	the name of the function in the dynamically loaded shared library,
times	first value = the time at which the function needs to be evaluated,
y	the values of the dependent variables for which the function needs to be evaluated,
parms	the parameters that are passed to the initialiser function,
dllname	a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in func,
initfunc	if not NULL, the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in 'dllname'. See details.
rpar	a vector with double precision values passed to the DLL-function func and jacfunc present in the DLL, via argument rpar,
ipar	a vector with integer values passed to the dll-function func and jacfunc present in the DLL, via function argument ipar,
nout	the number of output variables.
outnames	only used if 'dllname' is specified and nout > 0: the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function func, present in the shared library.
forcings	only used if 'dllname' is specified: a list with the forcing function data sets, each present as a two-columned matrix, with (time, value); interpolation outside the interval [min(times), max(times)] is done by taking the value at the closest data extreme. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initforc	if not NULL, the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in 'dllname'. It MUST be present if forcings has been given a value. See package vignette "compiledCode".
fcontrol	A list of control parameters for the forcing functions. See package vignette "compiledCode".

**Details**

This function is meant to help developing FORTRAN or C models that are to be used to solve ordinary differential equations (ODE) in packages deSolve and/or rootSolve.

**Value**

a list containing:

dy	the rate of change estimated by the function,
var	the ordinary output variables of the function.

**Author(s)**

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

**See Also**

[ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers

**Examples**

```
## =====
## ex. 1
## ccl4model
## =====
## Parameter values and initial conditions
## see example(ccl4model) for a more comprehensive implementation

Parms <- c(0.182, 4.0, 4.0, 0.08, 0.04, 0.74, 0.05, 0.15, 0.32,
           16.17, 281.48, 13.3, 16.17, 5.487, 153.8, 0.04321671,
           0.4027255, 1000, 0.02, 1.0, 3.8)

yini <- c(AI = 21, AAM = 0, AT = 0, AF = 0, AL = 0, CLT = 0, AM = 0)

## the rate of change
DLLfunc(y = yini, dllname = "deSolve", func = "derivsccl4",
        initfunc = "initccl4", parms = Parms, times = 1,
        nout = 3, outnames = c("DOSE", "MASS", "CP") )

## =====
## ex. 2
## SCOC model
## =====

## Forcing function "data"
Flux <- matrix(ncol = 2, byrow = TRUE, data = c(1, 0.654, 2, 0.167))
parms <- c(k = 0.01)
Yini <- 60

DLLfunc(y=Yini, times=1, func = "scocder",
        parms = parms, dllname = "deSolve",
        initforc = "scocforc", forcings = Flux,
        initfunc = "scocpar", nout = 2,
        outnames = c("Mineralisation", "Depo"))
## correct value = dy = flux - k * y = 0.654 - 0.01 * 60

DLLfunc(y = Yini, times = 2, func = "scocder",
        parms = parms, dllname = "deSolve",
        initforc = "scocforc", forcings = Flux,
        initfunc = "scocpar", nout = 2,
        outnames = c("Mineralisation", "Depo"))
```



---

 DLLres

*Evaluates a Residual Derivative Function Represented in a DLL*


---

### Description

Calls a residual function,  $F(t, y, y')$  of a DAE system (differential algebraic equations) defined in a compiled language as a DLL.

To be used for testing the implementation of DAE problems in compiled code

### Usage

```
DLLres(res, times, y, dy, parms, dllname,
       initfunc = dllname, rpar = NULL, ipar = NULL, nout = 0,
       outnames = NULL, forcings = NULL, initforc = NULL,
       fcontrol = NULL)
```

### Arguments

res	the name of the function in the dynamically loaded shared library,
times	first value = the time at which the function needs to be evaluated,
y	the values of the dependent variables for which the function needs to be evaluated,
dy	the derivative of the values of the dependent variables for which the function needs to be evaluated,
parms	the parameters that are passed to the initialiser function,
dllname	a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in func,
initfunc	if not NULL, the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in 'dllname'. See details,
rpar	a vector with double precision values passed to the DLL-function func and jacfunc present in the DLL, via argument rpar,
ipar	a vector with integer values passed to the DLL-function func and jacfunc present in the DLL, via function argument ipar,
nout	the number of output variables.
outnames	only used if 'dllname' is specified and nout > 0: the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function func, present in the shared library.
forcings	only used if 'dllname' is specified: a list with the forcing function data sets, each present as a two-columned matrix, with (time,value); interpolation outside the interval [min(times), max(times)] is done by taking the value at the closest data extreme. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initforc	if not NULL, the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in 'dllname'. It MUST be present if forcings has been given a value. See package vignette "compiledCode".

`fcontrol` A list of control parameters for the forcing functions. See package vignette "compiledCode".

### Details

This function is meant to help developing FORTRAN or C models that are to be used to solve differential algebraic equations (DAE) in package `deSolve`.

### Value

a list containing:

`res` the residual of derivative estimated by the function  
`var` the ordinary output variables of the function

### Author(s)

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

### See Also

[daspk](#) to solve DAE problems

### Examples

```
## =====
## Residuals from the daspk chemical model, production a forcing function
## =====
## Parameter values and initial conditions
## see example(daspk) for a more comprehensive implementation

pars <- c(K = 1, ka = 1e6, r = 1)

## Initial conc; D is in equilibrium with A,B
y <- c(A = 2, B = 3, D = 2 * 3/pars["K"])

## Initial rate of change
dy <- c(dA = 0, dB = 0, dD = 0)

## production increases with time
prod <- matrix(ncol = 2,
               data = c(seq(0, 100, by = 10), seq(0.1, 0.5, len = 11)))

DLLres(y = y, dy = dy, times = 5, res = "chemres",
        dllname = "deSolve", initfunc = "initparms",
        initforc = "initforcs", parms = pars, forcings = prod,
        nout = 2, outnames = c("CONC", "Prod"))
```

**Description**

An event occurs when the value of a state variable is suddenly changed, e.g. because a value is added, subtracted, or multiplied. The integration routines cannot deal easily with such state variable changes. Typically these events occur only at specific times. In `deSolve`, events can be imposed by means of an input `data.frame`, that specifies at which time and how a certain state variable is altered, or via an event function.

Roots occur when a root function becomes zero. By default when a root is found, the simulation either stops (no event), or triggers an event.

**Details**

The events are specified by means of argument `events` passed to the integration routines.

`events` should be a list that contains one of the following:

**func:** an R-function or the name of a function in compiled code that specifies the event,

**data:** a `data.frame` that specifies the state variables, times, values and types of the events. Note that the event times must also be part of the integration output times, else the event will not take place. As from version 1.9.1, this is checked by the solver, and a warning message is produced if event times are missing in times; see also [cleanEventTimes](#) for utility functions to check and solve such issues.

**time:** when events are specified by an event function: the times at which the events take place. Note that these event times must also be part of the integration output times exactly, else the event would not take place. As from version 1.9.1 this is checked by the solver, and an error message produced if event times are missing in times; see also [cleanEventTimes](#) for utility functions to check and solve such issues.

**root:** when events are specified by a function and triggered by a root, this logical should be set equal to `TRUE`

**terminalroot:** when events are triggered by a root, the default is that the simulation continues after the event is executed. In `terminalroot`, we can specify which roots should terminate the simulation.

**maxroot:** when `root = TRUE`, the maximal number of times at with a root is found and that are kept; defaults to 100. If the number of roots  $>$  `maxroot`, then only the first `maxroot` will be outputted.

**ties:** if events, as specified by a `data.frame` are "ordered", set to "ordered", the default is "notordered". This will save some computational time.

In case the events are specified by means of an **R function** (argument `events$func`), it must be defined as: `function(t, y, parms, ...)`. `t` is the current time point in the integration, `y` is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values `y` has a `names` attribute, the `names` will be available inside `events$func`. `parms` is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional)

are any other arguments passed to the function via the call to the integration method. The event function should return the y-values (some of which modified), as a *vector*.

If `events$func` is a string, this indicates that the events are specified by a function in compiled code. This function has as arguments, the number of state variables, the time, and the state variable vector. See package vignette "compiledCode" for more details.

In case events are specified by an R-function, this requires either: input of the *time* of the events, a vector as defined in `events$time` OR the specification of a *root* function. In the latter case, the model must be solved with an integration routine with root-finding capability

The root function itself should be specified with argument `rootfunc`. In this case, the integrator is informed that the simulation is to be continued after a root is found by setting `events$root` equal to TRUE.

If the events are specified by a **data frame** (argument `events$data`), this should contain the following columns (and in that order):

**var:** the state variable *name* or *number* that is affected by the event

**time:** the time at which the event is to take place; the solvers will check if the time is embraced by the simulation time

**value:** the value, magnitude of the event

**method:** which event is to take place; should be one of ("replace", "add", "multiply"); also allowed is to specify the number (1 = replace, 2 = add, 3 = multiply)

For instance, the following line

```
"v1" 10 2 "add"
```

will cause the value 2 to be added to a state variable, called "v1" at time = 10.

From deSolve version 1.9.1 the following routines have **root-finding** capability: [lsoda](#), [lsode](#), [lsodes](#), and [radau](#). For the first 3 integration methods, the root finding algorithm is based on the algorithm in solver LSODAR, and is implemented in FORTRAN. For [radau](#), the root solving algorithm is written in C-code, and it works slightly different. Thus, some problems involving roots may be more efficiently solved with either [lsoda](#), [lsode](#), or [lsodes](#), while other problems are more efficiently solved with [radau](#).

If a root function is defined, but not an event function, then by default the solver will stop at a root. If this is not desirable, e.g. because we want to record the position of many roots, then a dummy "event" function can be defined which returns the values of the state variables - unaltered.

If roots and events are combined, and roots are found, then the output will have attribute `troot` which will contain the times at which a root was found (and the event triggered). There will be at most `events$maxroot` such values. The default is 100.

See two last examples; also see example of [ccl4model](#).

### Author(s)

Karline Soetaert

### See Also

[forcings](#), for how to implement forcing functions.

[lsodar](#), for more examples of roots

**Examples**

```

## =====
## 1. EVENTS in a data.frame
## =====

## derivative function: derivatives set to 0
derivs <- function(t, var, parms) {
  list(dvar = rep(0, 2))
}

yini <- c(v1 = 1, v2 = 2)
times <- seq(0, 10, by = 0.1)

eventdat <- data.frame(var = c("v1", "v2", "v2", "v1"),
                      time = c(1, 1, 5, 9) ,
                      value = c(1, 2, 3, 4),
                      method = c("add", "mult", "rep", "add"))

eventdat

out <- vode(func = derivs, y = yini, times = times, parms = NULL,
           events = list(data = eventdat))
plot(out)

##
eventdat <- data.frame(var = c(rep("v1", 10), rep("v2", 10)),
                      time = c(1:10, 1:10),
                      value = runif(20),
                      method = rep("add", 20))

eventdat

out <- ode(func = derivs, y = yini, times = times, parms = NULL,
          events = list(data = eventdat))

plot(out)

## =====
## 2. EVENTS in a function
## =====

## derivative function: rate of change v1 = 0, v2 reduced at first-order rate
derivs <- function(t, var, parms) {
  list(c(0, -0.5 * var[2]))
}

# events: add 1 to v1, multiply v2 with random number
eventfun <- function(t, y, parms){
  with (as.list(y),{
    v1 <- v1 + 1
    v2 <- 5 * runif(1)
    return(c(v1, v2))
  })
}

```

```

}

yini <- c(v1 = 1, v2 = 2)
times <- seq(0, 10, by = 0.1)

out <- ode(func = derivs, y = yini, times = times, parms = NULL,
           events = list(func = eventfun, time = c(1:9, 2.2, 2.4)) )
plot(out, type = "l")

## =====
## 3. EVENTS triggered by a root function
## =====

## derivative: simple first-order decay
derivs <- function(t, y, pars) {
  return(list(-0.1 * y))
}

## event triggered if state variable = 0.5
rootfun <- function (t, y, pars) {
  return(y - 0.5)
}

## sets state variable = 1
eventfun <- function(t, y, pars) {
  return(y = 1)
}

yini <- 2
times <- seq(0, 100, 0.1)

## uses ode to solve; root = TRUE specifies that the event is
## triggered by a root.
out <- ode(times = times, y = yini, func = derivs, parms = NULL,
           events = list(func = eventfun, root = TRUE),
           rootfun = rootfun)

plot(out, type = "l")

## time of the root:
troot <- attributes(out)$troot
points(troot, rep(0.5, length(troot)))

## =====
## 4. More ROOT examples: Rotation function
## =====
Rotate <- function(t, x, p )
  list(c( x[2],
         -x[1] ))

## Root = when second state variable = 0
rootfun <- function(t, x, p) x[2]

```

```

## "event" returns state variables unchanged
eventfun <- function(t, x, p) x
times <- seq(from = 0, to = 15, by = 0.1)

## 1. No event: stops at first root
out1 <- ode(func = Rotate, y = c(5, 5), parms = 0,
           times = times, rootfun = rootfun)
tail(out1)

## 2. Continues till end of times and records the roots
out <- ode(func = Rotate, y = c(5, 5), parms = 0,
          times = times, rootfun = rootfun,
          events = list(func = eventfun, root = TRUE) )

plot(out)
troot <- attributes(out)$troot # time of roots
points(troot, rep(0, length (troot)))

## Multiple roots: either one of the state variables = 0
root2 <- function(t, x, p) x

out2 <- ode(func = Rotate, y = c(5, 5), parms = 0,
           times = times, rootfun = root2,
           events = list(func = eventfun, root = TRUE) )

plot(out2, which = 2)
troot <- attributes(out2)$troot
indroot <- attributes(out2)$indroot # which root was found
points(troot, rep(0, length (troot)), col = indroot, pch = 18, cex = 2)

## Multiple roots and stop at first time root 1.
out3 <- ode(func = Rotate, y = c(5, 5), parms = 0,
           times = times, rootfun = root2,
           events = list(func = eventfun, root = TRUE, terminalroot = 1))

## =====
## 5. Stop at 5th root - only works with radau.
## =====
Rotate <- function(t, x, p )
  list(c( x[2],
         -x[1],
         0 ))

## Root = when second state variable = 0
root3 <- function(t, x, p) c(x[2], x[3] - 5)
event3 <- function (t, x, p) c(x[1:2], x[3]+1)
times <- seq(0, 15, 0.1)
out3 <- ode(func = Rotate, y = c(x1 = 5, x2 = 5, nroot = 0),
           parms = 0, method = "radau",
           times = times, rootfun = root3,
           events = list(func = event3, root = TRUE, terminalroot = 2))

```

```

plot(out3)
attributes(out3)[c("troot", "nroot", "indroot")]

## =====
## 6 Event in R-code, model function in compiled code - based on vode example
## =====

times <- 1:365
Flux <- cbind(times, sin(pi*times/365)^2) # forcing function

# run without events
out <- ode(y = c(C = 1), times, func = "scocder", parms = c(k=0.01),
  dllname = "deSolve", initforc = "scocforc", forcings = Flux,
  initfunc = "scocpar", nout = 2, outnames = c("Mineralisation", "Depo"))

# Event halves the concentration
EventMin <- function(t, y , p) y/2

out2 <- ode(y = c(C = 1), times, func = "scocder", parms = c(k=0.01),
  dllname = "deSolve", initforc = "scocforc", forcings = Flux,
  initfunc = "scocpar", nout = 2, outnames = c("Mineralisation", "Depo"),
  events = list (func = EventMin, time = c(50.1, 200, 210.5)))

plot(out, out2)

```

---

forcings

---

*Passing Forcing Functions to Models Written in R or Compiled Code.*


---

## Description

A forcing function is an external variable that is essential to the model, but not explicitly modeled. Rather, it is imposed as a time-series. Thus, if a model uses forcing variables, their value at each time point needs to be estimated by interpolation of a data series.

## Details

The forcing functions are imposed as a data series, that contains the values of the forcings at specified times.

Models may be defined in compiled C or FORTRAN code, as well as in R.

If the model is defined in *R code*, it is most efficient to:

1. define a function that performs the linear interpolation, using R's [approxfun](#). It is generally recommended to use `rule = 2`, such as to allow extrapolation outside of the time interval, especially when using the Livermore solvers, as these may exceed the last time point.
2. call this function within the model's derivative function, to interpolate at the current timestep.

See first example.



If the models are defined in *compiled C or FORTRAN code*, it is possible to use deSolves forcing function update algorithm. This is the compiled-code equivalent of `approxfun` or `approx`.

In this case:

1. the forcing function data series is provided by means of argument `forcings`,
2. `initforc` is the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in `'dllname'`, while
3. `fcontrol` is a list used to finetune how the forcing update should be performed.

The **fcontrol** argument is a list that can supply any of the following components (conform the definitions in the `approxfun` function):

**method** specifies the interpolation method to be used. Choices are "linear" or "constant",

**rule** an integer describing how interpolation is to take place outside the interval  $[\min(\text{times}), \max(\text{times})]$ . If rule is 1 then an error will be triggered and the calculation will stop if `times` extends the interval of the forcing function data set. If it is 2, the **default**, the value at the closest data extreme is used, a warning will be printed if `verbose` is TRUE,

Note that the default differs from the `approx` default.

**f** For `method = "constant"` a number between 0 and 1 inclusive, indicating a compromise between left- and right-continuous step functions. If  $y_0$  and  $y_1$  are the values to the left and right of the point then the value is  $y_0 * (1 - f) + y_1 * f$  so that  $f = 0$  is right-continuous and  $f = 1$  is left-continuous,

**ties** Handling of tied times values. Either a function with a single vector argument returning a single number result or the string "ordered".

Note that the default is "ordered", hence the existence of ties will NOT be investigated; in the C code this will mean that -if ties exist, the first value will be used; if the dataset is not ordered, then nonsense will be produced.

Alternative values for `ties` are `mean`, `min` etc

The defaults are:

```
fcontrol = list(method = "linear", rule = 2, f = 0, ties = "ordered")
```

Note that only ONE specification is allowed, even if there is more than one forcing function data set.

More information about models defined in compiled code is in the package vignette ("compiled-Code").

## Note

How to write compiled code is described in package vignette "compiledCode", which should be referred to for details.

This vignette also contains examples on how to pass forcing functions.

## Author(s)

Karline Soetaert,

Thomas Petzoldt,

R. Woodrow Setzer

**See Also**

[approx](#) or [approxfun](#), the R function,  
[events](#) for how to implement events.

**Examples**

```
## =====
## FORCING FUNCTION: The sediment oxygen consumption example - R-code:
## =====

## Forcing function data
Flux <- matrix(ncol=2,byrow=TRUE,data=c(
  1, 0.654, 11, 0.167, 21, 0.060, 41, 0.070, 73,0.277, 83,0.186,
  93,0.140,103, 0.255, 113, 0.231,123, 0.309,133,1.127,143,1.923,
  153,1.091,163,1.001, 173, 1.691,183, 1.404,194,1.226,204,0.767,
  214, 0.893,224,0.737, 234,0.772,244, 0.726,254,0.624,264,0.439,
  274,0.168,284 ,0.280, 294,0.202,304, 0.193,315,0.286,325,0.599,
  335, 1.889,345, 0.996,355,0.681,365,1.135))

parms <- c(k=0.01)

times <- 1:365

## the model
sediment <- function( t, O2, k)
  list (c(Depo(t) - k * O2), depo = Depo(t))

# the forcing functions; rule = 2 avoids NaNs in interpolation
Depo <- approxfun(x = Flux[,1], y = Flux[,2], method = "linear", rule = 2)

Out <- ode(times = times, func = sediment, y = c(O2 = 63), parms = parms)

## same forcing functions, now constant interpolation
Depo <- approxfun(x = Flux[,1], y = Flux[,2], method = "constant",
  f = 0.5, rule = 2)

Out2 <- ode(times = times, func = sediment, y = c(O2 = 63), parms = parms)

mf <- par(mfrow = c(2, 1))
plot (Out, which = "depo", type = "l", lwd = 2, mfrow = NULL)
lines(Out2[, "time"], Out2[, "depo"], col = "red", lwd = 2)

plot (Out, which = "O2", type = "l", lwd = 2, mfrow = NULL)
lines(Out2[, "time"], Out2[, "O2"], col = "red", lwd = 2)

## =====
## SCOC is the same model, as implemented in FORTRAN
## =====

out<- SCOC(times, parms = parms, Flux = Flux)

plot(out[, "time"], out[, "Depo"], type = "l", col = "red")
```

```

lines(out[,"time"], out[,"Mineralisation"], col = "blue")

## Constant interpolation of forcing function - left side of interval
fcontrol <- list(method = "constant")

out2 <- SCOC(times, parms = parms, Flux = Flux, fcontrol = fcontrol)

plot(out2[,"time"], out2[,"Depo"], type = "l", col = "red")
lines(out2[,"time"], out2[,"Mineralisation"], col = "blue")

## Not run:
## =====
## show examples (see respective help pages for details)
## =====

example(aquaphy)

## show package vignette with tutorial about how to use compiled models
## + source code of the vignette
## + directory with C and FORTRAN sources
vignette("compiledCode")
edit(vignette("compiledCode"))
browseURL(paste(system.file(package = "deSolve"), "/doc", sep = ""))

## End(Not run)

```

---

lsoda

*Solver for Ordinary Differential Equations (ODE), Switching Automatically Between Stiff and Non-stiff Methods*

---

## Description

Solving initial value problems for stiff or non-stiff systems of first-order ordinary differential equations (ODEs).

The R function `lsoda` provides an interface to the FORTRAN ODE solver of the same name, written by Linda R. Petzold and Alan C. Hindmarsh.

The system of ODE's is written as an R function (which may, of course, use `.C`, `.Fortran`, `.Call`, etc., to call foreign code) or be defined in compiled code that has been dynamically loaded. A vector of parameters is passed to the ODEs, so the solver may be used as part of a modeling package for ODEs, or for parameter estimation using any appropriate modeling tool for non-linear models in R such as `optim`, `nls`, `nlm` or `nlme`

`lsoda` differs from the other integrators (except `lsodar`) in that it switches automatically between stiff and nonstiff methods. This means that the user does not have to determine whether the problem is stiff or not, and the solver will automatically choose the appropriate method. It always starts with the nonstiff method.

**Usage**

```
lsoda(y, times, func, parms, rtol = 1e-6, atol = 1e-6,
      jacfunc = NULL, jactype = "fullint", rootfunc = NULL,
      verbose = FALSE, nroot = 0, tcrit = NULL,
      hmin = 0, hmax = NULL, hini = 0, ynames = TRUE,
      maxordn = 12, maxords = 5, bandup = NULL, banddown = NULL,
      maxsteps = 5000, dllname = NULL, initfunc = dllname,
      initpar = parms, rpar = NULL, ipar = NULL, nout = 0,
      outnames = NULL, forcings = NULL, initforc = NULL,
      fcontrol = NULL, events = NULL, lags = NULL,...)
```

**Arguments**

- |         |   |
|---------|---|
| y       | the initial (state) values for the ODE system. If y has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.  |
| times   | times at which explicit estimates for y are desired. The first value in times must be the initial time.   |
| func    | <p>either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the <i>model definition</i>) at time t, or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library, or a list of symbols returned by <a href="#">checkDLL</a>.</p> <p>If func is an R-function, it must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code>. t is the current time point in the integration, y is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values y has a names attribute, the names will be available inside func. parms is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.</p> <p>The return value of func should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of y with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in times. The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables y.</p> <p>If func is a string, then dllname must give the name of the shared library (without extension) which must be loaded before lsoda() is called. See package vignette "compiledCode" for more details.</p> <p>func can also be a list of symbols returned by <a href="#">checkDLL</a> to avoid overhead from repeated internal calls to this function. It is an experimental feature for special situations, when a small compiled model with a low number of integration steps is repeatedly called. It is currently only available for the lsoda solver, see <a href="#">example</a>.</p> |
| parms   | vector or list of parameters used in func or jacfunc.   |
| rtol    | relative error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as y. See details.  |
| atol    | absolute error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as y. See details.  |
| jacfunc | if not NULL, an R function, that computes the Jacobian of the system of differential equations $\partial \dot{y}_i / \partial y_j$ , or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the Jacobian (see vignette "compiledCode" for more about this option).  |

In some circumstances, supplying `jacfunc` can speed up the computations, if the system is stiff. The R calling sequence for `jacfunc` is identical to that of `func`.

If the Jacobian is a full matrix, `jacfunc` should return a matrix  $\partial y_j / \partial y_i$ , where the *i*th row contains the derivative of  $dy_i/dt$  with respect to  $y_j$ , or a vector containing the matrix elements by columns (the way R and FORTRAN store matrices). If the Jacobian is banded, `jacfunc` should return a matrix containing only the nonzero bands of the Jacobian, rotated row-wise. See first example of `lsode`.

<code>jactype</code>	the structure of the Jacobian, one of "fullint", "fullusr", "bandusr" or "bandint" - either full or banded and estimated internally or by user.
<code>rootfunc</code>	if not NULL, an R function that computes the function whose root has to be estimated or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the root function. The R calling sequence for <code>rootfunc</code> is identical to that of <code>func</code> . <code>rootfunc</code> should return a vector with the function values whose root is sought. When <code>rootfunc</code> is provided, then <code>lsodar</code> will be called.
<code>verbose</code>	if TRUE: full output to the screen, e.g. will print the diagnostics of the integration - see details.
<code>nroot</code>	only used if 'dllname' is specified: the number of constraint functions whose roots are desired during the integration; if <code>rootfunc</code> is an R-function, the solver estimates the number of roots.
<code>tcrit</code>	if not NULL, then <code>lsoda</code> cannot integrate past <code>tcrit</code> . The FORTRAN routine <code>lsoda</code> overshoots its targets (times points in the vector <code>times</code> ), and interpolates values for the desired time points. If there is a time beyond which integration should not proceed (perhaps because of a singularity), that should be provided in <code>tcrit</code> .
<code>hmin</code>	an optional minimum value of the integration stepsize. In special situations this parameter may speed up computations with the cost of precision. Don't use <code>hmin</code> if you don't know why!
<code>hmax</code>	an optional maximum value of the integration stepsize. If not specified, <code>hmax</code> is set to the largest difference in <code>times</code> , to avoid that the simulation possibly ignores short-term events. If 0, no maximal size is specified.
<code>hini</code>	initial step size to be attempted; if 0, the initial step size is determined by the solver.
<code>yname</code>	logical, if FALSE: names of state variables are not passed to function <code>func</code> ; this may speed up the simulation especially for large models.
<code>maxordn</code>	the maximum order to be allowed in case the method is non-stiff. Should be $\leq 12$ . Reduce <code>maxord</code> to save storage space.
<code>maxords</code>	the maximum order to be allowed in case the method is stiff. Should be $\leq 5$ . Reduce <code>maxord</code> to save storage space.
<code>bandup</code>	number of non-zero bands above the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded.
<code>banddown</code>	number of non-zero bands below the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded.
<code>maxsteps</code>	maximal number of steps per output interval taken by the solver.
<code>dllname</code>	a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains all the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> . See package vignette "compiledCode".

<code>initfunc</code>	if not NULL, the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in <code>'dllname'</code> . See package vignette "compiledCode".
<code>initpar</code>	only when <code>'dllname'</code> is specified and an initialisation function <code>initfunc</code> is in the dll: the parameters passed to the initialiser, to initialise the common blocks (FORTRAN) or global variables (C, C++).
<code>rpar</code>	only when <code>'dllname'</code> is specified: a vector with double precision values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> .
<code>ipar</code>	only when <code>'dllname'</code> is specified: a vector with integer values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> .
<code>nout</code>	only used if <code>dllname</code> is specified and the model is defined in compiled code: the number of output variables calculated in the compiled function <code>func</code> , present in the shared library. Note: it is not automatically checked whether this is indeed the number of output variables calculated in the dll - you have to perform this check in the code. See package vignette "compiledCode".
<code>outnames</code>	only used if <code>'dllname'</code> is specified and <code>nout &gt; 0</code> : the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function <code>func</code> , present in the shared library. These names will be used to label the output matrix.
<code>forcings</code>	only used if <code>'dllname'</code> is specified: a list with the forcing function data sets, each present as a two-columned matrix, with (time,value); interpolation outside the interval $[\min(\text{times}), \max(\text{times})]$ is done by taking the value at the closest data extreme. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
<code>initforc</code>	if not NULL, the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in <code>'dllname'</code> . It MUST be present if <code>forcings</code> has been given a value. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
<code>fcontrol</code>	A list of control parameters for the forcing functions. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or vignette <code>compiledCode</code> .
<code>events</code>	A matrix or data frame that specifies events, i.e. when the value of a state variable is suddenly changed. See <a href="#">events</a> for more information.
<code>lags</code>	A list that specifies <code>timelags</code> , i.e. the number of steps that has to be kept. To be used for delay differential equations. See <a href="#">timelags</a> , <a href="#">dede</a> for more information.
<code>...</code>	additional arguments passed to <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> allowing this to be a generic function.

## Details

All the hard work is done by the FORTRAN subroutine `lsoda`, whose documentation should be consulted for details (it is included as comments in the source file `'src/opkdomain.f'`). The implementation is based on the 12 November 2003 version of `lsoda`, from Netlib.

`lsoda` switches automatically between stiff and nonstiff methods. This means that the user does not have to determine whether the problem is stiff or not, and the solver will automatically choose the appropriate method. It always starts with the nonstiff method.

The form of the **Jacobian** can be specified by `jactype` which can take the following values:

**"fullint"** a full Jacobian, calculated internally by `lsoda`, the default,

- "**fullusr**" a full Jacobian, specified by user function `jacfunc`,
- "**bandusr**" a banded Jacobian, specified by user function `jacfunc` the size of the bands specified by `bandup` and `banddown`,
- "**bandint**" banded Jacobian, calculated by `Isoda`; the size of the bands specified by `bandup` and `banddown`.

If `jactype = "fullusr"` or `"bandusr"` then the user must supply a subroutine `jacfunc`.

The following description of **error control** is adapted from the documentation of the `Isoda` source code (input arguments `rtol` and `atol`, above):

The input parameters `rtol`, and `atol` determine the error control performed by the solver. The solver will control the vector **e** of estimated local errors in **y**, according to an inequality of the form  $\max\text{-norm of } ( \mathbf{e}/\mathbf{ewt} ) \leq 1$ , where **ewt** is a vector of positive error weights. The values of `rtol` and `atol` should all be non-negative. The form of **ewt** is:

$$\mathbf{rtol} \times \mathbf{abs}(\mathbf{y}) + \mathbf{atol}$$

where multiplication of two vectors is element-by-element.

If the request for precision exceeds the capabilities of the machine, the FORTRAN subroutine `Isoda` will return an error code; under some circumstances, the R function `lsoda` will attempt a reasonable reduction of precision in order to get an answer. It will write a warning if it does so.

The diagnostics of the integration can be printed to screen by calling [diagnostics](#). If `verbose = TRUE`, the diagnostics will be written to the screen at the end of the integration.

See vignette("deSolve") for an explanation of each element in the vectors containing the diagnostic properties and how to directly access them.

**Models** may be defined in compiled C or FORTRAN code, as well as in an R-function. See package vignette "compiledCode" for details.

More information about models defined in compiled code is in the package vignette ("compiled-Code"); information about linking forcing functions to compiled code is in [forcings](#).

Examples in both C and FORTRAN are in the 'dynload' subdirectory of the `deSolve` package directory.

## Value

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the next elements of the return from `func`, plus an additional column for the time value. There will be a row for each element in `times` unless the FORTRAN routine 'Isoda' returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

## Note

The 'demo' directory contains some examples of using [gnls](#) to estimate parameters in a dynamic model.

## Author(s)

R. Woodrow Setzer <setzer.woodrow@epa.gov>

## References

Hindmarsh, Alan C. (1983) ODEPACK, A Systematized Collection of ODE Solvers; in p.55–64 of Stepleman, R.W. et al.[ed.] (1983) *Scientific Computing*, North-Holland, Amsterdam.

Petzold, Linda R. (1983) Automatic Selection of Methods for Solving Stiff and Nonstiff Systems of Ordinary Differential Equations. *Siam J. Sci. Stat. Comput.* **4**, 136–148. doi:10.1137/0904010

Netlib: <https://netlib.org>

## See Also

- `rk`, `rkMethod`, `rk4` and `euler` for Runge-Kutta integrators.
- `lsode`, which can also find a root
- `lsodes`, `lsodar`, `vode`, `daspk` for other solvers of the Livermore family,
- `ode` for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,
- `ode.band` for solving models with a banded Jacobian,
- `ode.1D` for integrating 1-D models,
- `ode.2D` for integrating 2-D models,
- `ode.3D` for integrating 3-D models,

`diagnostics` to print diagnostic messages.

## Examples

```
## =====
## Example 1:
## A simple resource limited Lotka-Volterra-Model
##
## Note:
## 1. parameter and state variable names made
##    accessible via "with" function
## 2. function sigimp accessible through lexical scoping
##    (see also ode and rk examples)
## =====

SPCmod <- function(t, x, parms) {
  with(as.list(c(parms, x)), {
    import <- sigimp(t)
    dS <- import - b*S*P + g*C      #substrate
    dP <- c*S*P - d*C*P            #producer
    dC <- e*P*C - f*C              #consumer
    res <- c(dS, dP, dC)
    list(res)
  })
}

## Parameters
parms <- c(b = 0.0, c = 0.1, d = 0.1, e = 0.1, f = 0.1, g = 0.0)

## vector of timesteps
times <- seq(0, 100, length = 101)
```



```

## external signal with rectangle impulse
signal <- as.data.frame(list(times = times,
                             import = rep(0,length(times))))

signal$import[signal$times >= 10 & signal$times <= 11] <- 0.2

sigimp <- approxfun(signal$times, signal$import, rule = 2)

## Start values for steady state
y <- xstart <- c(S = 1, P = 1, C = 1)

## Solving
out <- lsoda(xstart, times, SPCmod, parms)

## Plotting
mf <- par("mfrow")
plot(out, main = c("substrate", "producer", "consumer"))
plot(out[, "P"], out[, "C"], type = "l", xlab = "producer", ylab = "consumer")
par(mfrow = mf)

## =====
## Example 2:
## from lsoda source code
## =====

## names makes this easier to read, but may slow down execution.
parms <- c(k1 = 0.04, k2 = 1e4, k3 = 3e7)
my.atol <- c(1e-6, 1e-10, 1e-6)
times <- c(0, 4 * 10^(-1:10))

lsexamp <- function(t, y, p) {
  yd1 <- -p["k1"] * y[1] + p["k2"] * y[2]*y[3]
  yd3 <- p["k3"] * y[2]^2
  list(c(yd1, -yd1-yd3, yd3), c(massbalance = sum(y)))
}

exampjac <- function(t, y, p) {
  matrix(c(-p["k1"], p["k1"], 0,
          p["k2"]*y[3],
          - p["k2"]*y[3] - 2*p["k3"]*y[2],
          2*p["k3"]*y[2],
          p["k2"]*y[2], -p["k2"]*y[2], 0
          ), 3, 3)
}

## measure speed (here and below)
system.time(
  out <- lsoda(c(1, 0, 0), times, lsexamp, parms, rtol = 1e-4,

```

```

        atol = my.atol, hmax = Inf)
)
out

## This is what the authors of lsoda got for the example:

## the output of this program (on a cdc-7600 in single precision)
## is as follows..
##
## at t = 4.0000e-01 y = 9.851712e-01 3.386380e-05 1.479493e-02
## at t = 4.0000e+00 y = 9.055333e-01 2.240655e-05 9.444430e-02
## at t = 4.0000e+01 y = 7.158403e-01 9.186334e-06 2.841505e-01
## at t = 4.0000e+02 y = 4.505250e-01 3.222964e-06 5.494717e-01
## at t = 4.0000e+03 y = 1.831975e-01 8.941774e-07 8.168016e-01
## at t = 4.0000e+04 y = 3.898730e-02 1.621940e-07 9.610125e-01
## at t = 4.0000e+05 y = 4.936363e-03 1.984221e-08 9.950636e-01
## at t = 4.0000e+06 y = 5.161831e-04 2.065786e-09 9.994838e-01
## at t = 4.0000e+07 y = 5.179817e-05 2.072032e-10 9.999482e-01
## at t = 4.0000e+08 y = 5.283401e-06 2.113371e-11 9.999947e-01
## at t = 4.0000e+09 y = 4.659031e-07 1.863613e-12 9.999995e-01
## at t = 4.0000e+10 y = 1.404280e-08 5.617126e-14 1.000000e+00

## Using the analytic Jacobian speeds up execution a little :

system.time(
  outJ <- lsoda(c(1, 0, 0), times, lsexamp, parms, rtol = 1e-4,
    atol = my.atol, jacfunc = exampjac, jactype = "fullusr", hmax = Inf)
)

all.equal(as.data.frame(out), as.data.frame(outJ)) # TRUE
diagnostics(out)
diagnostics(outJ) # shows what lsoda did internally

```

---

lsodar

*Solver for Ordinary Differential Equations (ODE), Switching Automatically Between Stiff and Non-stiff Methods and With Root Finding*

---

## Description

Solving initial value problems for stiff or non-stiff systems of first-order ordinary differential equations (ODEs) and including root-finding.

The R function `lsodar` provides an interface to the FORTRAN ODE solver of the same name, written by Alan C. Hindmarsh and Linda R. Petzold.

The system of ODE's is written as an R function or be defined in compiled code that has been dynamically loaded. - see description of [lsoda](#) for details.

`lsodar` differs from `lsode` in two respects.

- It switches automatically between stiff and nonstiff methods (similar as `lsoda`).

- It finds the root of at least one of a set of constraint functions  $g(i)$  of the independent and dependent variables.

Two uses of `lsodar` are:

- To stop the simulation when a certain condition is met
- To trigger [events](#), i.e. sudden changes in one of the state variables when a certain condition is met.

when a particular condition is met.

## Usage

```
lsodar(y, times, func, parms, rtol = 1e-6, atol = 1e-6,
       jacfunc = NULL, jactype = "fullint", rootfunc = NULL,
       verbose = FALSE, nroot = 0, tcrit = NULL, hmin = 0,
       hmax = NULL, hini = 0, ynames = TRUE, maxordn = 12,
       maxords = 5, bandup = NULL, banddown = NULL, maxsteps = 5000,
       dllname = NULL, initfunc = dllname, initpar = parms,
       rpar = NULL, ipar = NULL, nout = 0, outnames = NULL, forcings=NULL,
       initforc = NULL, fcontrol=NULL, events=NULL, lags = NULL, ...)
```

## Arguments

<code>y</code>	the initial (state) values for the ODE system. If <code>y</code> has a <code>name</code> attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.
<code>times</code>	times at which explicit estimates for <code>y</code> are desired. The first value in <code>times</code> must be the initial time.
<code>func</code>	<p>either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the <i>model definition</i>) at time <code>t</code>, or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library.</p> <p>If <code>func</code> is an R-function, it must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code>. <code>t</code> is the current time point in the integration, <code>y</code> is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values <code>y</code> has a <code>names</code> attribute, the names will be available inside <code>func</code>. <code>parms</code> is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.</p> <p>The return value of <code>func</code> should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of <code>y</code> with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in <code>times</code>. The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables <code>y</code>.</p> <p>If <code>func</code> is a string, then <code>dllname</code> must give the name of the shared library (without extension) which must be loaded before <code>lsodar()</code> is called. See package vignette "compiledCode" for more details.</p>
<code>parms</code>	vector or list of parameters used in <code>func</code> or <code>jacfunc</code> .
<code>rtol</code>	relative error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as <code>y</code> . See details.
<code>atol</code>	absolute error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as <code>y</code> . See details.

jacfunc	<p>if not NULL, an R function, that computes the Jacobian of the system of differential equations <math>\partial y_i / \partial y_j</math>, or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the Jacobian (see vignette "compiledCode" for more about this option).</p> <p>In some circumstances, supplying jacfunc can speed up the computations, if the system is stiff. The R calling sequence for jacfunc is identical to that of func.</p> <p>If the Jacobian is a full matrix, jacfunc should return a matrix <math>\partial y / \partial y</math>, where the <i>i</i>th row contains the derivative of <math>dy_i / dt</math> with respect to <math>y_j</math>, or a vector containing the matrix elements by columns (the way R and FORTRAN store matrices). If the Jacobian is banded, jacfunc should return a matrix containing only the nonzero bands of the Jacobian, rotated row-wise. See first example of <code>lsode</code>.</p>
jactype	the structure of the Jacobian, one of "fullint", "fullusr", "bandusr" or "bandint" - either full or banded and estimated internally or by user.
rootfunc	if not NULL, an R function that computes the function whose root has to be estimated or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the root function. The R calling sequence for rootfunc is identical to that of func. rootfunc should return a vector with the function values whose root is sought.
verbose	a logical value that, when TRUE, will print the diagnostics of the integration - see details.
nroot	only used if 'dllname' is specified: the number of constraint functions whose roots are desired during the integration; if rootfunc is an R-function, the solver estimates the number of roots.
tcrit	if not NULL, then lsodar cannot integrate past tcrit. The FORTRAN routine lsodar overshoots its targets (times points in the vector times), and interpolates values for the desired time points. If there is a time beyond which integration should not proceed (perhaps because of a singularity), that should be provided in tcrit.
hmin	an optional minimum value of the integration stepsize. In special situations this parameter may speed up computations with the cost of precision. Don't use hmin if you don't know why!
hmax	an optional maximum value of the integration stepsize. If not specified, hmax is set to the largest difference in times, to avoid that the simulation possibly ignores short-term events. If 0, no maximal size is specified.
hini	initial step size to be attempted; if 0, the initial step size is determined by the solver.
yname	logical, if FALSE: names of state variables are not passed to function func; this may speed up the simulation especially for large models.
maxordn	the maximum order to be allowed in case the method is non-stiff. Should be $\leq 12$ . Reduce maxord to save storage space.
maxords	the maximum order to be allowed in case the method is stiff. Should be $\leq 5$ . Reduce maxord to save storage space.
bandup	number of non-zero bands above the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded.

banddown	number of non-zero bands below the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded.
maxsteps	maximal number of steps per output interval taken by the solver.
dllname	a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains all the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> . See package vignette "compiledCode".
initfunc	if not NULL, the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in 'dllname'. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initpar	only when 'dllname' is specified and an initialisation function <code>initfunc</code> is in the dll: the parameters passed to the initialiser, to initialise the common blocks (FORTRAN) or global variables (C, C++).
rpar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with double precision values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> .
ipar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with integer values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> .
nout	only used if <code>dllname</code> is specified and the model is defined in compiled code: the number of output variables calculated in the compiled function <code>func</code> , present in the shared library. Note: it is not automatically checked whether this is indeed the number of output variables calculated in the dll - you have to perform this check in the code - See package vignette "compiledCode".
outnames	only used if 'dllname' is specified and <code>nout &gt; 0</code> : the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function <code>func</code> , present in the shared library. These names will be used to label the output matrix.
forcings	only used if 'dllname' is specified: a list with the forcing function data sets, each present as a two-columned matrix, with (time,value); interpolation outside the interval <code>[min(times), max(times)]</code> is done by taking the value at the closest data extreme. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
initforc	if not NULL, the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in 'dllname'. It MUST be present if <code>forcings</code> has been given a value. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
fcontrol	A list of control parameters for the forcing functions. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or vignette <code>compiledCode</code> .
events	A matrix or data frame that specifies events, i.e. when the value of a state variable is suddenly changed. See <a href="#">events</a> for more information.
lags	A list that specifies timelags, i.e. the number of steps that has to be kept. To be used for delay differential equations. See <a href="#">timelags</a> , <a href="#">dede</a> for more information.
...	additional arguments passed to <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> allowing this to be a generic function.

## Details

The work is done by the FORTRAN subroutine `lsodar`, whose documentation should be consulted for details (it is included as comments in the source file 'src/opkdomain.f'). The implementation is based on the November, 2003 version of `lsodar`, from Netlib.

Isodar switches automatically between stiff and nonstiff methods (similar as lsoda). This means that the user does not have to determine whether the problem is stiff or not, and the solver will automatically choose the appropriate method. It always starts with the nonstiff method.

Isodar can find the root of at least one of a set of constraint functions `rootfunc` of the independent and dependent variables. It then returns the solution at the root if that occurs sooner than the specified stop condition, and otherwise returns the solution according the specified stop condition.

Caution: Because of numerical errors in the function `rootfun` due to roundoff and integration error, Isodar may return false roots, or return the same root at two or more nearly equal values of `time`.

The form of the **Jacobian** can be specified by `jactype` which can take the following values:

**jactype = "fullint"**: a full Jacobian, calculated internally by Isodar, the default,

**jactype = "fullusr"**: a full Jacobian, specified by user function `jacfunc`,

**jactype = "bandusr"**: a banded Jacobian, specified by user function `jacfunc`; the size of the bands specified by `bandup` and `banddown`,

**jactype = "bandint"**: banded Jacobian, calculated by Isodar; the size of the bands specified by `bandup` and `banddown`.

If `jactype = "fullusr"` or `"bandusr"` then the user must supply a subroutine `jacfunc`.

The input parameters `rtol`, and `atol` determine the **error control** performed by the solver. See [lsoda](#) for details.

The output will have the attribute **iroot**, if a root was found **iroot** is a vector, its length equal to the number of constraint functions it will have a value of 1 for the constraint function whose root that has been found and 0 otherwise.

The diagnostics of the integration can be printed to screen by calling [diagnostics](#). If `verbose = TRUE`, the diagnostics will written to the screen at the end of the integration.

See vignette("deSolve") for an explanation of each element in the vectors containing the diagnostic properties and how to directly access them.

**Models** may be defined in compiled C or FORTRAN code, as well as in an R-function. See package vignette "compiledCode" for details.

More information about models defined in compiled code is in the package vignette ("compiled-Code"); information about linking forcing functions to compiled code is in [forcings](#).

Examples in both C and FORTRAN are in the 'dynload' subdirectory of the deSolve package directory.

## Value

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the next elements of the return from `func`, plus and additional column for the time value. There will be a row for each element in `times` unless the FORTRAN routine 'Isodar' returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

If a root has been found, the output will have the attribute `iroot`, an integer indicating which root has been found.

**Author(s)**

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

**References**

Alan C. Hindmarsh, ODEPACK, A Systematized Collection of ODE Solvers, in Scientific Computing, R. S. Stepleman et al. (Eds.), North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1983, pp. 55-64.

Linda R. Petzold, Automatic Selection of Methods for Solving Stiff and Nonstiff Systems of Ordinary Differential Equations, Siam J. Sci. Stat. Comput. 4 (1983), pp. 136-148. doi:10.1137/0904010

Kathie L. Hiebert and Lawrence F. Shampine, Implicitly Defined Output Points for Solutions of ODEs, Sandia Report SAND80-0180, February 1980.

Netlib: <https://netlib.org>

**See Also**

- [roots](#) for more examples on roots and events
  - [rk](#), [rkMethod](#), [rk4](#) and [euler](#) for Runge-Kutta integrators.
  - [lsoda](#), [lsode](#), [lsodes](#), [vode](#), [daspk](#) for other solvers of the Livermore family,
  - [ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,
  - [ode.band](#) for solving models with a banded Jacobian,
  - [ode.1D](#) for integrating 1-D models,
  - [ode.2D](#) for integrating 2-D models,
  - [ode.3D](#) for integrating 3-D models,
- [diagnostics](#) to print diagnostic messages.

**Examples**

```
## =====
## Example 1:
## from lsodar source code
## =====

Fun <- function (t, y, parms) {
  ydot <- vector(len = 3)
  ydot[1] <- -.04*y[1] + 1.e4*y[2]*y[3]
  ydot[3] <- 3.e7*y[2]*y[2]
  ydot[2] <- -ydot[1] - ydot[3]
  return(list(ydot, ytot = sum(y)))
}

rootFun <- function (t, y, parms) {
  yroot <- vector(len = 2)
  yroot[1] <- y[1] - 1.e-4
  yroot[2] <- y[3] - 1.e-2
  return(yroot)
}
```

```

y      <- c(1, 0, 0)
times <- c(0, 0.4*10^(0:8))

out    <- lsodar(y = y, times = times, fun = Fun, rootfun = rootFun,
                rtol = 1e-4, atol = c(1e-6, 1e-10, 1e-6), parms = NULL)
print(paste("root is found for eqn", which(attributes(out)$iroot == 1)))
print(out[nrow(out),])

diagnostics(out)

## =====
## Example 2:
## using lsodar to estimate steady-state conditions
## =====

## Bacteria (Bac) are growing on a substrate (Sub)
model <- function(t, state, pars) {
  with (as.list(c(state, pars)), {
    ##      substrate uptake      death      respiration
    dBact <- gmax*eff*Sub/(Sub+ks)*Bact - dB*Bact - rB*Bact
    dSub  <- -gmax *Sub/(Sub+ks)*Bact + dB*Bact          + input

    return(list(c(dBact,dSub)))
  })
}

## root is the condition where sum of |rates of change|
## is very small

rootfun <- function (t, state, pars) {
  dstate <- unlist(model(t, state, pars)) # rate of change vector
  return(sum(abs(dstate)) - 1e-10)
}

pars <- list(Bini = 0.1, Sini = 100, gmax = 0.5, eff = 0.5,
            ks = 0.5, rB = 0.01, dB = 0.01, input = 0.1)

tout    <- c(0, 1e10)
state   <- c(Bact = pars$Bini, Sub = pars$Sini)
out     <- lsodar(state, tout, model, pars, rootfun = rootfun)
print(out)

## =====
## Example 3:
## using lsodar to trigger an event
## =====

## a state variable is decaying at a first-order rate.
## when it reaches the value 0.1, a random amount is added.

derivfun <- function (t,y,parms)

```



```

list (-0.05 * y)

rootfun <- function (t,y,parms)
  return(y - 0.1)

eventfun <- function(t,y,parms)
  return(y + runif(1))

yini <- 0.8
times <- 0:200

out <- lsodar(func=derivfun, y = yini, times=times,
  rootfunc = rootfun, events = list(func=eventfun, root = TRUE))

plot(out, type = "l", lwd = 2, main = "lsodar with event")

```

lsode

*Solver for Ordinary Differential Equations (ODE)***Description**

Solves the initial value problem for stiff or nonstiff systems of ordinary differential equations (ODE) in the form:

$$dy/dt = f(t, y)$$

.

The R function `lsode` provides an interface to the FORTRAN ODE solver of the same name, written by Alan C. Hindmarsh and Andrew H. Sherman.

It combines parts of the code `lsodar` and can thus find the root of at least one of a set of constraint functions  $g(i)$  of the independent and dependent variables. This can be used to stop the simulation or to trigger **events**, i.e. a sudden change in one of the state variables.

The system of ODE's is written as an R function or be defined in compiled code that has been dynamically loaded.

In contrast to `lsoda`, the user has to specify whether or not the problem is stiff and choose the appropriate solution method.

`lsode` is very similar to `vode`, but uses a fixed-step-interpolate method rather than the variable-coefficient method in `vode`. In addition, in `vode` it is possible to choose whether or not a copy of the Jacobian is saved for reuse in the corrector iteration algorithm; In `lsode`, a copy is not kept.

**Usage**

```

lsode(y, times, func, parms, rtol = 1e-6, atol = 1e-6,
  jacfunc = NULL, jactype = "fullint", mf = NULL, rootfunc = NULL,
  verbose = FALSE, nroot = 0, tcrit = NULL, hmin = 0, hmax = NULL,
  hini = 0, ynames = TRUE, maxord = NULL, bandup = NULL, banddown = NULL,
  maxsteps = 5000, dllname = NULL, initfunc = dllname,

```

```
initpar = parms, rpar = NULL, ipar = NULL, nout = 0,
outnames = NULL, forcings=NULL, initforc = NULL,
fcontrol=NULL, events=NULL, lags = NULL,...)
```

## Arguments

y	the initial (state) values for the ODE system. If y has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.
times	time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of times must be the initial time; if only one step is to be taken; set times = NULL.
func	<p>either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the <i>model definition</i>) at time t, or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library.</p> <p>If func is an R-function, it must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code>. t is the current time point in the integration, y is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values y has a names attribute, the names will be available inside func. parms is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.</p> <p>The return value of func should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of y with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in times. The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables y.</p> <p>If func is a string, then dllname must give the name of the shared library (without extension) which must be loaded before lsolve() is called. See package vignette "compiledCode" for more details.</p>
parms	vector or list of parameters used in func or jacfunc.
rtol	relative error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as y. See details.
atol	absolute error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as y. See details.
jacfunc	<p>if not NULL, an R function that computes the Jacobian of the system of differential equations <math>\partial y_i / \partial y_j</math>, or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the Jacobian (see vignette "compiledCode" for more about this option).</p> <p>In some circumstances, supplying jacfunc can speed up the computations, if the system is stiff. The R calling sequence for jacfunc is identical to that of func.</p> <p>If the Jacobian is a full matrix, jacfunc should return a matrix <math>\partial y / \partial y</math>, where the ith row contains the derivative of <math>dy_i / dt</math> with respect to <math>y_j</math>, or a vector containing the matrix elements by columns (the way R and FORTRAN store matrices). If the Jacobian is banded, jacfunc should return a matrix containing only the nonzero bands of the Jacobian, rotated row-wise. See first example of lsolve.</p>
jactype	the structure of the Jacobian, one of "fullint", "fullusr", "bandusr" or "bandint" - either full or banded and estimated internally or by user; overruled if mfi is not NULL.
mf	the "method flag" passed to function lsolve - overrules jactype - provides more options than jactype - see details.

rootfunc	if not NULL, an R function that computes the function whose root has to be estimated or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the root function. The R calling sequence for rootfunc is identical to that of func. rootfunc should return a vector with the function values whose root is sought.
verbose	if TRUE: full output to the screen, e.g. will print the diagnostics of the integration - see details.
nroot	only used if 'dllname' is specified: the number of constraint functions whose roots are desired during the integration; if rootfunc is an R-function, the solver estimates the number of roots.
tcrit	if not NULL, then lsode cannot integrate past tcrit. The FORTRAN routine lsode overshoots its targets (times points in the vector times), and interpolates values for the desired time points. If there is a time beyond which integration should not proceed (perhaps because of a singularity), that should be provided in tcrit.
hmin	an optional minimum value of the integration stepsize. In special situations this parameter may speed up computations with the cost of precision. Don't use hmin if you don't know why!
hmax	an optional maximum value of the integration stepsize. If not specified, hmax is set to the largest difference in times, to avoid that the simulation possibly ignores short-term events. If 0, no maximal size is specified.
hini	initial step size to be attempted; if 0, the initial step size is determined by the solver.
yname	logical, if FALSE names of state variables are not passed to function func; this may speed up the simulation especially for multi-D models.
maxord	the maximum order to be allowed. NULL uses the default, i.e. order 12 if implicit Adams method (meth = 1), order 5 if BDF method (meth = 2). Reduce maxord to save storage space.
bandup	number of non-zero bands above the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded.
banddown	number of non-zero bands below the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded.
maxsteps	maximal number of steps per output interval taken by the solver.
dllname	a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains all the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in func and jacfunc. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initfunc	if not NULL, the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in 'dllname'. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initpar	only when 'dllname' is specified and an initialisation function initfunc is in the dll: the parameters passed to the initialiser, to initialise the common blocks (FORTRAN) or global variables (C, C++).
rpar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with double precision values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by func and jacfunc.
ipar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with integer values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by func and jacfunc.

nout	only used if <code>dllname</code> is specified and the model is defined in compiled code: the number of output variables calculated in the compiled function <code>func</code> , present in the shared library. Note: it is not automatically checked whether this is indeed the number of output variables calculated in the dll - you have to perform this check in the code - See package vignette "compiledCode".
outnames	only used if 'dllname' is specified and <code>nout &gt; 0</code> : the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function <code>func</code> , present in the shared library. These names will be used to label the output matrix.
forcings	only used if 'dllname' is specified: a list with the forcing function data sets, each present as a two-columned matrix, with (time,value); interpolation outside the interval <code>[min(times), max(times)]</code> is done by taking the value at the closest data extreme. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
initforc	if not NULL, the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in 'dllname'. It MUST be present if <code>forcings</code> has been given a value. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
fcontrol	A list of control parameters for the forcing functions. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or vignette <code>compiledCode</code> .
events	A matrix or data frame that specifies events, i.e. when the value of a state variable is suddenly changed. See <a href="#">events</a> for more information.
lags	A list that specifies <code>timelags</code> , i.e. the number of steps that has to be kept. To be used for delay differential equations. See <a href="#">timelags</a> , <a href="#">dede</a> for more information.
...	additional arguments passed to <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> allowing this to be a generic function.

## Details

The work is done by the FORTRAN subroutine `lsode`, whose documentation should be consulted for details (it is included as comments in the source file 'src/opkdomain.f'). The implementation is based on the November, 2003 version of `lsode`, from Netlib.

Before using the integrator `lsode`, the user has to decide whether or not the problem is stiff.

If the problem is nonstiff, use method flag `mf = 10`, which selects a nonstiff (Adams) method, no Jacobian used.

If the problem is stiff, there are four standard choices which can be specified with `jactype` or `mf`.

The options for **jactype** are

**jactype = "fullint"** a full Jacobian, calculated internally by `lsode`, corresponds to `mf = 22`,

**jactype = "fullusr"** a full Jacobian, specified by user function `jacfunc`, corresponds to `mf = 21`,

**jactype = "bandusr"** a banded Jacobian, specified by user function `jacfunc`; the size of the bands specified by `bandup` and `banddown`, corresponds to `mf = 24`,

**jactype = "bandint"** a banded Jacobian, calculated by `lsode`; the size of the bands specified by `bandup` and `banddown`, corresponds to `mf = 25`.

More options are available when specifying **mf** directly.

The legal values of `mf` are 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25.

`mf` is a positive two-digit integer, `mf = (10*METH + MITER)`, where

**METH** indicates the basic linear multistep method: **METH** = 1 means the implicit Adams method. **METH** = 2 means the method based on backward differentiation formulas (BDF-s).

**MITER** indicates the corrector iteration method: **MITER** = 0 means functional iteration (no Jacobian matrix is involved). **MITER** = 1 means chord iteration with a user-supplied full (NEQ by NEQ) Jacobian. **MITER** = 2 means chord iteration with an internally generated (difference quotient) full Jacobian (using NEQ extra calls to func per df/dy value). **MITER** = 3 means chord iteration with an internally generated diagonal Jacobian approximation (using 1 extra call to func per df/dy evaluation). **MITER** = 4 means chord iteration with a user-supplied banded Jacobian. **MITER** = 5 means chord iteration with an internally generated banded Jacobian (using  $ML+MU+1$  extra calls to func per df/dy evaluation).

If **MITER** = 1 or 4, the user must supply a subroutine jacfunc.

Inspection of the example below shows how to specify both a banded and full Jacobian.

The input parameters **rtol**, and **atol** determine the **error control** performed by the solver. See [lsoda](#) for details.

The diagnostics of the integration can be printed to screen by calling [diagnostics](#). If **verbose** = TRUE, the diagnostics will be written to the screen at the end of the integration.

See vignette("deSolve") for an explanation of each element in the vectors containing the diagnostic properties and how to directly access them.

**Models** may be defined in compiled C or FORTRAN code, as well as in an R-function. See package vignette "compiledCode" for details.

More information about models defined in compiled code is in the package vignette ("compiled-Code"); information about linking forcing functions to compiled code is in [forcings](#).

Examples in both C and FORTRAN are in the 'dynload' subdirectory of the deSolve package directory.

Isode can find the root of at least one of a set of constraint functions **rootfunc** of the independent and dependent variables. It then returns the solution at the root if that occurs sooner than the specified stop condition, and otherwise returns the solution according to the specified stop condition.

Caution: Because of numerical errors in the function **rootfun** due to roundoff and integration error, Isode may return false roots, or return the same root at two or more nearly equal values of time.

## Value

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in **times** and as many columns as elements in **y** plus the number of "global" values returned in the next elements of the return from **func**, plus an additional column for the time value. There will be a row for each element in **times** unless the FORTRAN routine 'lsode' returns with an unrecoverable error. If **y** has a **names** attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

## Author(s)

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

## References

Alan C. Hindmarsh, "ODEPACK, A Systematized Collection of ODE Solvers," in Scientific Computing, R. S. Stepleman, et al., Eds. (North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1983), pp. 55-64.

**See Also**

- [rk](#),
- [rk4](#) and [euler](#) for Runge-Kutta integrators.
- [lsoda](#), [lsodes](#), [lsodar](#), [vode](#), [daspk](#) for other solvers of the Livermore family,
- [ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,
- [ode.band](#) for solving models with a banded Jacobian,
- [ode.1D](#) for integrating 1-D models,
- [ode.2D](#) for integrating 2-D models,
- [ode.3D](#) for integrating 3-D models,

[diagnostics](#) to print diagnostic messages.

**Examples**

```
## =====
## Example 1:
## Various ways to solve the same model.
## =====

## the model, 5 state variables
f1 <- function (t, y, parms) {
  ydot <- vector(len = 5)

  ydot[1] <- 0.1*y[1] -0.2*y[2]
  ydot[2] <- -0.3*y[1] +0.1*y[2] -0.2*y[3]
  ydot[3] <-          -0.3*y[2] +0.1*y[3] -0.2*y[4]
  ydot[4] <-          -0.3*y[3] +0.1*y[4] -0.2*y[5]
  ydot[5] <-          -0.3*y[4] +0.1*y[5]

  return(list(ydot))
}

## the Jacobian, written as a full matrix
fulljac <- function (t, y, parms) {
  jac <- matrix(nrow = 5, ncol = 5, byrow = TRUE,
               data = c(0.1, -0.2, 0, 0, 0,
                       -0.3, 0.1, -0.2, 0, 0,
                       0, -0.3, 0.1, -0.2, 0,
                       0, 0, -0.3, 0.1, -0.2,
                       0, 0, 0, -0.3, 0.1))

  return(jac)
}

## the Jacobian, written in banded form
bandjac <- function (t, y, parms) {
  jac <- matrix(nrow = 3, ncol = 5, byrow = TRUE,
               data = c(0, -0.2, -0.2, -0.2, -0.2,
                       0.1, 0.1, 0.1, 0.1, 0.1,
                       -0.3, -0.3, -0.3, -0.3, 0))

  return(jac)
}
```

```

}

## initial conditions and output times
yini <- 1:5
times <- 1:20

## default: stiff method, internally generated, full Jacobian
out <- lsode(yini, times, f1, parms = 0, jactype = "fullint")

## stiff method, user-generated full Jacobian
out2 <- lsode(yini, times, f1, parms = 0, jactype = "fullusr",
              jacfunc = fulljac)

## stiff method, internally-generated banded Jacobian
## one nonzero band above (up) and below(down) the diagonal
out3 <- lsode(yini, times, f1, parms = 0, jactype = "bandint",
              bandup = 1, banddown = 1)

## stiff method, user-generated banded Jacobian
out4 <- lsode(yini, times, f1, parms = 0, jactype = "bandusr",
              jacfunc = bandjac, bandup = 1, banddown = 1)

## non-stiff method
out5 <- lsode(yini, times, f1, parms = 0, mf = 10)

## =====
## Example 2:
## diffusion on a 2-D grid
## partially specified Jacobian
## =====

diffusion2D <- function(t, Y, par) {
  y <- matrix(nrow = n, ncol = n, data = Y)
  dY <- r*y      # production

  ## diffusion in X-direction; boundaries = 0-concentration
  Flux <- -Dx * rbind(y[1,],(y[2:n,]-y[1:(n-1),]),-y[n,])/dx
  dY <- dY - (Flux[2:(n+1),]-Flux[1:n,])/dx

  ## diffusion in Y-direction
  Flux <- -Dy * cbind(y[,1],(y[,2:n]-y[,1:(n-1)]),-y[,n])/dy
  dY <- dY - (Flux[,2:(n+1)]-Flux[,1:n])/dy

  return(list(as.vector(dY)))
}

## parameters
dy <- dx <- 1 # grid size
Dy <- Dx <- 1 # diffusion coeff, X- and Y-direction
r <- 0.025 # production rate
times <- c(0, 1)

n <- 50

```

```

y <- matrix(nrow = n, ncol = n, 0)

pa <- par(ask = FALSE)

## initial condition
for (i in 1:n) {
  for (j in 1:n) {
    dst <- (i - n/2)^2 + (j - n/2)^2
    y[i, j] <- max(0, 1 - 1/(n*n) * (dst - n)^2)
  }
}
filled.contour(y, color.palette = terrain.colors)

## =====
## jacfunc need not be estimated exactly
## a crude approximation, with a smaller bandwidth will do.
## Here the half-bandwidth 1 is used, whereas the true
## half-bandwidths are equal to n.
## This corresponds to ignoring the y-direction coupling in the ODEs.
## =====

print(system.time(
  for (i in 1:20) {
    out <- lsode(func = diffusion2D, y = as.vector(y), times = times,
                 parms = NULL, jactype = "bandint", bandup = 1, banddown = 1)

    filled.contour(matrix(nrow = n, ncol = n, out[2,-1]), zlim = c(0,1),
                   color.palette = terrain.colors, main = i)

    y <- out[2, -1]
  }
))
par(ask = pa)

```

---

Isodes

*Solver for Ordinary Differential Equations (ODE) With Sparse Jacobian*


---

## Description

Solves the initial value problem for stiff systems of ordinary differential equations (ODE) in the form:

$$dy/dt = f(t, y)$$

and where the Jacobian matrix  $df/dy$  has an arbitrary sparse structure.

The R function `lsodes` provides an interface to the FORTRAN ODE solver of the same name, written by Alan C. Hindmarsh and Andrew H. Sherman.

The system of ODE's is written as an R function or be defined in compiled code that has been dynamically loaded.



**Usage**

```
lsodes(y, times, func, parms, rtol = 1e-6, atol = 1e-6,
       jacvec = NULL, sparsetype = "sparseint", nnz = NULL,
       inz = NULL, rootfunc = NULL,
       verbose = FALSE, nroot = 0, tcrit = NULL, hmin = 0,
       hmax = NULL, hini = 0, ynames = TRUE, maxord = NULL,
       maxsteps = 5000, lrw = NULL, liw = NULL, dllname = NULL,
       initfunc = dllname, initpar = parms, rpar = NULL,
       ipar = NULL, nout = 0, outnames = NULL, forcings=NULL,
       initforc = NULL, fcontrol=NULL, events=NULL, lags = NULL,
       ...)
```

**Arguments**

- |        |  |
|--------|--|
| y      | the initial (state) values for the ODE system. If y has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.   |
| times  | time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of times must be the initial time; if only one step is to be taken; set times = NULL.  |
| func   | <p>either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the <i>model definition</i>) at time t, or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library.</p> <p>If func is an R-function, it must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code>. t is the current time point in the integration, y is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values y has a names attribute, the names will be available inside func. parms is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.</p> <p>The return value of func should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of y with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in times. The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables y.</p> <p>If func is a string, then dllname must give the name of the shared library (without extension) which must be loaded before lsodes() is called. See package vignette "compiledCode" for more details.</p> |
| parms  | vector or list of parameters used in func or jacfunc.  |
| rtol   | relative error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as y. See details.   |
| atol   | absolute error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as y. See details.   |
| jacvec | <p>if not NULL, an R function that computes a column of the Jacobian of the system of differential equations <math>\partial \dot{y}_i / \partial y_j</math>, or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the column of the Jacobian (see vignette "compiledCode" for more about this option).</p> <p>The R calling sequence for jacvec is identical to that of func, but with extra parameter j, denoting the column number. Thus, jacvec should be called as: <code>jacvec = func(t, y, j, parms)</code> and jacvec should return a vector containing column j of the Jacobian, i.e. its i-th value is <math>\partial \dot{y}_i / \partial y_j</math>. If this function is absent, lsodes will generate the Jacobian by differences.</p>   |

<code>sparsetype</code>	the sparsity structure of the Jacobian, one of "sparseint" or "sparseusr", "sparsejan", ..., The sparsity can be estimated internally by Isodes (first option) or given by the user (last two). See details.
<code>nnz</code>	the number of nonzero elements in the sparse Jacobian (if this is unknown, use an estimate).
<code>inz</code>	if <code>sparsetype</code> equal to "sparseusr", a two-columned matrix with the (row, column) indices to the nonzero elements in the sparse Jacobian. If <code>sparsetype</code> = "sparsejan", a vector with the elements <code>ian</code> followed by the elements <code>jan</code> as used in the Isodes code. See details. In all other cases, ignored.
<code>rootfunc</code>	if not NULL, an R function that computes the function whose root has to be estimated or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the root function. The R calling sequence for <code>rootfunc</code> is identical to that of <code>func</code> . <code>rootfunc</code> should return a vector with the function values whose root is sought.
<code>verbose</code>	if TRUE: full output to the screen, e.g. will print the diagnostics of the integration - see details.
<code>nroot</code>	only used if 'dllname' is specified: the number of constraint functions whose roots are desired during the integration; if <code>rootfunc</code> is an R-function, the solver estimates the number of roots.
<code>tcrit</code>	if not NULL, then Isodes cannot integrate past <code>tcrit</code> . The FORTRAN routine Isodes overshoots its targets (times points in the vector <code>times</code> ), and interpolates values for the desired time points. If there is a time beyond which integration should not proceed (perhaps because of a singularity), that should be provided in <code>tcrit</code> .
<code>hmin</code>	an optional minimum value of the integration stepsize. In special situations this parameter may speed up computations with the cost of precision. Don't use <code>hmin</code> if you don't know why!
<code>hmax</code>	an optional maximum value of the integration stepsize. If not specified, <code>hmax</code> is set to the largest difference in <code>times</code> , to avoid that the simulation possibly ignores short-term events. If 0, no maximal size is specified.
<code>hini</code>	initial step size to be attempted; if 0, the initial step size is determined by the solver.
<code>yname</code> s	logical, if FALSE names of state variables are not passed to function <code>func</code> ; this may speed up the simulation especially for multi-D models.
<code>maxord</code>	the maximum order to be allowed. NULL uses the default, i.e. order 12 if implicit Adams method ( <code>meth</code> = 1), order 5 if BDF method ( <code>meth</code> = 2). Reduce <code>maxord</code> to save storage space.
<code>maxsteps</code>	maximal number of steps per output interval taken by the solver.
<code>lrw</code>	the length of the real work array <code>rwork</code> ; due to the sparsicity, this cannot be readily predicted. If NULL, a guess will be made, and if not sufficient, Isodes will return with a message indicating the size of <code>rwork</code> actually required. Therefore, some experimentation may be necessary to estimate the value of <code>lrw</code> . For instance, if you get the error:

DLSODES- RWORK length is insufficient to proceed.

Length needed is .ge. LENRW (=I1), exceeds LRW (=I2)

In above message, I1 = 27627 I2 = 25932

set lrw equal to 27627 or a higher value

liw	the length of the integer work array iwork; due to the sparsicity, this cannot be readily predicted. If NULL, a guess will be made, and if not sufficient, lsodes will return with a message indicating the size of iwork actually required. Therefore, some experimentation may be necessary to estimate the value of liw.
dllname	a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains all the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in func and jacfunc. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initfunc	if not NULL, the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in 'dllname'. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initpar	only when 'dllname' is specified and an initialisation function initfunc is in the dll: the parameters passed to the initialiser, to initialise the common blocks (FORTRAN) or global variables (C, C++).
rpar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with double precision values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by func and jacfunc.
ipar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with integer values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by func and jacfunc.
nout	only used if dllname is specified and the model is defined in compiled code: the number of output variables calculated in the compiled function func, present in the shared library. Note: it is not automatically checked whether this is indeed the number of output variables calculated in the dll - you have to perform this check in the code. See package vignette "compiledCode".
outnames	only used if 'dllname' is specified and nout > 0: the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function func, present in the shared library. These names will be used to label the output matrix.
forcings	only used if 'dllname' is specified: a list with the forcing function data sets, each present as a two-columned matrix, with (time,value); interpolation outside the interval [min(times), max(times)] is done by taking the value at the closest data extreme. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
initforc	if not NULL, the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in 'dllname'. It MUST be present if forcings has been given a value. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
fcontrol	A list of control parameters for the forcing functions. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or vignette compiledCode.
events	A matrix or data frame that specifies events, i.e. when the value of a state variable is suddenly changed. See <a href="#">events</a> for more information.
lags	A list that specifies timelags, i.e. the number of steps that has to be kept. To be used for delay differential equations. See <a href="#">timelags</a> , <a href="#">dede</a> for more information.
...	additional arguments passed to func and jacfunc allowing this to be a generic function.

## Details

The work is done by the FORTRAN subroutine `lsodes`, whose documentation should be consulted for details (it is included as comments in the source file `'src/opkdomain.f'`). The implementation is based on the November, 2003 version of `lsodes`, from Netlib.

`lsodes` is applied for stiff problems, where the Jacobian has a sparse structure.

There are several choices depending on whether `jacvec` is specified and depending on the setting of `sparsetype`.

If function `jacvec` is present, then it should return the  $j$ -th column of the Jacobian matrix.

There are also several choices for the sparsity specification, selected by argument `sparsetype`.

- `sparsetype = "sparseint"`. The sparsity is estimated by the solver, based on numerical differences. In this case, it is advisable to provide an estimate of the number of non-zero elements in the Jacobian (`nnz`). This value can be approximate; upon return the number of nonzero elements actually required will be known (1st element of attribute `dims`). In this case, `inz` need not be specified.
- `sparsetype = "sparseusr"`. The sparsity is determined by the user. In this case, `inz` should be a matrix, containing indices (row, column) to the nonzero elements in the Jacobian matrix. The number of nonzeros `nnz` will be set equal to the number of rows in `inz`.
- `sparsetype = "sparsejan"`. The sparsity is also determined by the user. In this case, `inz` should be a vector, containing the `ian` and `jan` elements of the sparse storage format, as used in the sparse solver. Elements of `ian` should be the first  $n+1$  elements of this vector, and contain the starting locations in `jan` of columns 1..  $n$ . `jan` contains the row indices of the nonzero locations of the Jacobian, reading in columnwise order. The number of nonzeros `nnz` will be set equal to the length of `inz` - ( $n+1$ ).
- `sparsetype = "1D", "2D", "3D"`. The sparsity is estimated by the solver, based on numerical differences. Assumes finite differences in a 1D, 2D or 3D regular grid - used by functions `ode.1D`, `ode.2D`, `ode.3D`. Similar are `"2Dmap"`, and `"3Dmap"`, which also include a mapping variable (passed in `nnz`).

The input parameters `rtol`, and `atol` determine the **error control** performed by the solver. See [lsoda](#) for details.

The diagnostics of the integration can be printed to screen by calling [diagnostics](#). If `verbose = TRUE`, the diagnostics will be written to the screen at the end of the integration.

See `vignette("deSolve")` for an explanation of each element in the vectors containing the diagnostic properties and how to directly access them.

**Models** may be defined in compiled C or FORTRAN code, as well as in an R-function. See package vignette `"compiledCode"` for details.

More information about models defined in compiled code is in the package vignette `"compiledCode"`; information about linking forcing functions to compiled code is in [forcings](#).

Examples in both C and FORTRAN are in the `'doc/examples/dynload'` subdirectory of the `deSolve` package directory.

`lsodes` can find the root of at least one of a set of constraint functions `rootfunc` of the independent and dependent variables. It then returns the solution at the root if that occurs sooner than the specified stop condition, and otherwise returns the solution according to the specified stop condition.

Caution: Because of numerical errors in the function `rootfun` due to roundoff and integration error, `lsodes` may return false roots, or return the same root at two or more nearly equal values of `time`.

**Value**

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the next elements of the return from `func`, plus an additional column for the time value. There will be a row for each element in `times` unless the FORTRAN routine 'lsodes' returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

**Author(s)**

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

**References**

- Alan C. Hindmarsh, ODEPACK, A Systematized Collection of ODE Solvers, in Scientific Computing, R. S. Stepleman et al. (Eds.), North-Holland, Amsterdam, 1983, pp. 55-64.
- S. C. Eisenstat, M. C. Gursky, M. H. Schultz, and A. H. Sherman, Yale Sparse Matrix Package: I. The Symmetric Codes, *Int. J. Num. Meth. Eng.*, 18 (1982), pp. 1145-1151.
- S. C. Eisenstat, M. C. Gursky, M. H. Schultz, and A. H. Sherman, Yale Sparse Matrix Package: II. The Nonsymmetric Codes, Research Report No. 114, Dept. of Computer Sciences, Yale University, 1977.

**See Also**

- [rk](#),
  - [rk4](#) and [euler](#) for Runge-Kutta integrators.
  - [lsoda](#), [lsode](#), [lsodar](#), [vode](#), [daspk](#) for other solvers of the Livermore family,
  - [ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,
  - [ode.band](#) for solving models with a banded Jacobian,
  - [ode.1D](#) for integrating 1-D models,
  - [ode.2D](#) for integrating 2-D models,
  - [ode.3D](#) for integrating 3-D models,
- [diagnostics](#) to print diagnostic messages.

**Examples**

```
## Various ways to solve the same model.

## =====
## The example from lsodes source code
## A chemical model
## =====

n <- 12
y <- rep(1, n)
dy <- rep(0, n)

times <- c(0, 0.1*(10^(0:4)))
```

```

rtol <- 1.0e-4
atol <- 1.0e-6

parms <- c(rk1 = 0.1, rk2 = 10.0, rk3 = 50.0, rk4 = 2.5, rk5 = 0.1,
          rk6 = 10.0, rk7 = 50.0, rk8 = 2.5, rk9 = 50.0, rk10 = 5.0,
          rk11 = 50.0, rk12 = 50.0, rk13 = 50.0, rk14 = 30.0,
          rk15 = 100.0, rk16 = 2.5, rk17 = 100.0, rk18 = 2.5,
          rk19 = 50.0, rk20 = 50.0)

#
chemistry <- function (time, Y, pars) {
  with (as.list(pars), {
    dy[1] <- -rk1 *Y[1]
    dy[2] <- rk1 *Y[1] + rk11*rk14*Y[4] + rk19*rk14*Y[5] -
             rk3 *Y[2]*Y[3] - rk15*Y[2]*Y[12] - rk2*Y[2]
    dy[3] <- rk2 *Y[2] - rk5 *Y[3] - rk3*Y[2]*Y[3] -
             rk7*Y[10]*Y[3] + rk11*rk14*Y[4] + rk12*rk14*Y[6]
    dy[4] <- rk3 *Y[2]*Y[3] - rk11*rk14*Y[4] - rk4*Y[4]
    dy[5] <- rk15*Y[2]*Y[12] - rk19*rk14*Y[5] - rk16*Y[5]
    dy[6] <- rk7 *Y[10]*Y[3] - rk12*rk14*Y[6] - rk8*Y[6]
    dy[7] <- rk17*Y[10]*Y[12] - rk20*rk14*Y[7] - rk18*Y[7]
    dy[8] <- rk9 *Y[10] - rk13*rk14*Y[8] - rk10*Y[8]
    dy[9] <- rk4 *Y[4] + rk16*Y[5] + rk8*Y[6] +
             rk18*Y[7]
    dy[10] <- rk5 *Y[3] + rk12*rk14*Y[6] + rk20*rk14*Y[7] +
              rk13*rk14*Y[8] - rk7 *Y[10]*Y[3] - rk17*Y[10]*Y[12] -
              rk6 *Y[10] - rk9*Y[10]
    dy[11] <- rk10*Y[8]
    dy[12] <- rk6 *Y[10] + rk19*rk14*Y[5] + rk20*rk14*Y[7] -
              rk15*Y[2]*Y[12] - rk17*Y[10]*Y[12]
    return(list(dy))
  })
}

## =====
## application 1. lsodes estimates the structure of the Jacobian
## and calculates the Jacobian by differences
## =====
out <- lsodes(func = chemistry, y = y, parms = parms, times = times,
             atol = atol, rtol = rtol, verbose = TRUE)

## =====
## application 2. the structure of the Jacobian is input
## lsodes calculates the Jacobian by differences
## this is not so efficient...
## =====

## elements of Jacobian that are not zero
nonzero <- matrix(nc = 2, byrow = TRUE, data = c(
  1, 1, 2, 1, # influence of sp1 on rate of change of others
  2, 2, 3, 2, 4, 2, 5, 2, 12, 2,
  2, 3, 3, 3, 4, 3, 6, 3, 10, 3,

```

```

2, 4, 3, 4, 4, 4, 9, 4, # d (dyi)/dy4
2, 5, 5, 5, 9, 5, 12, 5,
3, 6, 6, 6, 9, 6, 10, 6,
7, 7, 9, 7, 10, 7, 12, 7,
8, 8, 10, 8, 11, 8,
3,10, 6,10, 7,10, 8,10, 10,10, 12,10,
2,12, 5,12, 7,12, 10,12, 12,12)
)

## when run, the default length of rwork is too small
## lsodes will tell the length actually needed
# out2 <- lsodes(func = chemistry, y = y, parms = parms, times = times,
#               inz = nonzero, atol = atol, rtol = rtol) #gives warning
out2 <- lsodes(func = chemistry, y = y, parms = parms, times = times,
              sparsetype = "sparseusr", inz = nonzero,
              atol = atol, rtol = rtol, verbose = TRUE, lrw = 353)

## =====
## application 3. lsodes estimates the structure of the Jacobian
##               the Jacobian (vector) function is input
## =====
chemjac <- function (time, Y, j, pars) {
  with (as.list(pars), {
    PDJ <- rep(0,n)

    if (j == 1){
      PDJ[1] <- -rk1
      PDJ[2] <- rk1
    } else if (j == 2) {
      PDJ[2] <- -rk3*Y[3] - rk15*Y[12] - rk2
      PDJ[3] <- rk2 - rk3*Y[3]
      PDJ[4] <- rk3*Y[3]
      PDJ[5] <- rk15*Y[12]
      PDJ[12] <- -rk15*Y[12]
    } else if (j == 3) {
      PDJ[2] <- -rk3*Y[2]
      PDJ[3] <- -rk5 - rk3*Y[2] - rk7*Y[10]
      PDJ[4] <- rk3*Y[2]
      PDJ[6] <- rk7*Y[10]
      PDJ[10] <- rk5 - rk7*Y[10]
    } else if (j == 4) {
      PDJ[2] <- rk11*rk14
      PDJ[3] <- rk11*rk14
      PDJ[4] <- -rk11*rk14 - rk4
      PDJ[9] <- rk4
    } else if (j == 5) {
      PDJ[2] <- rk19*rk14
      PDJ[5] <- -rk19*rk14 - rk16
      PDJ[9] <- rk16
      PDJ[12] <- rk19*rk14
    } else if (j == 6) {
      PDJ[3] <- rk12*rk14
      PDJ[6] <- -rk12*rk14 - rk8
    }
  })
}

```

```

    PDJ[9] <- rk8
    PDJ[10] <- rk12*rk14
  } else if (j == 7) {
    PDJ[7] <- -rk20*rk14 - rk18
    PDJ[9] <- rk18
    PDJ[10] <- rk20*rk14
    PDJ[12] <- rk20*rk14
  } else if (j == 8) {
    PDJ[8] <- -rk13*rk14 - rk10
    PDJ[10] <- rk13*rk14
    PDJ[11] <- rk10
  } else if (j == 10) {
    PDJ[3] <- -rk7*Y[3]
    PDJ[6] <- rk7*Y[3]
    PDJ[7] <- rk17*Y[12]
    PDJ[8] <- rk9
    PDJ[10] <- -rk7*Y[3] - rk17*Y[12] - rk6 - rk9
    PDJ[12] <- rk6 - rk17*Y[12]
  } else if (j == 12) {
    PDJ[2] <- -rk15*Y[2]
    PDJ[5] <- rk15*Y[2]
    PDJ[7] <- rk17*Y[10]
    PDJ[10] <- -rk17*Y[10]
    PDJ[12] <- -rk15*Y[2] - rk17*Y[10]
  }
  return(PDJ)
})
}

out3 <- lsodes(func = chemistry, y = y, parms = parms, times = times,
              jacvec = chemjac, atol = atol, rtol = rtol)

## =====
## application 4. The structure of the Jacobian (nonzero elements) AND
## the Jacobian (vector) function is input
## =====
out4 <- lsodes(func = chemistry, y = y, parms = parms, times = times,
              lrw = 351, sparsetype = "sparseusr", inz = nonzero,
              jacvec = chemjac, atol = atol, rtol = rtol,
              verbose = TRUE)

# The sparsejan variant
# note: errors in inz may cause R to break, so this is not without danger...
# out5 <- lsodes(func = chemistry, y = y, parms = parms, times = times,
#               jacvec = chemjac, atol = atol, rtol = rtol, sparsetype = "sparsejan",
#               inz = c(1,3,8,13,17,21,25,29,32,32,38,38,43,          # ian
#                       1,2, 2,3,4,5,12, 2,3,4,6,10, 2,3,4,9, 2,5,9,12, 3,6,9,10,    # jan
#                       7,9,10,12, 8,10,11, 3,6,7,8,10,12, 2,5,7,10,12), lrw = 343)

```



## Description

Solves a system of ordinary differential equations; a wrapper around the implemented ODE solvers

## Usage

```
ode(y, times, func, parms,
    method = c("lsoda", "lsode", "lsodes", "lsodar", "vode", "daspk",
              "euler", "rk4", "ode23", "ode45", "radau",
              "bdf", "bdf_d", "adams", "impAdams", "impAdams_d", "iteration"), ...)

## S3 method for class 'deSolve'
print(x, ...)
## S3 method for class 'deSolve'
summary(object, select = NULL, which = select,
         subset = NULL, ...)
```

## Arguments

- |        |  |
|--------|--|
| y      | the initial (state) values for the ODE system, a vector. If y has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.   |
| times  | time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of times must be the initial time.   |
| func   | <p>either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the model definition) at time t, or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library.</p> <p>If func is an R-function, it must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code>. t is the current time point in the integration, y is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values y has a names attribute, the names will be available inside func. parms is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.</p> <p>The return value of func should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of y with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in times. The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables y.</p> <p>If func is a string, then dllname must give the name of the shared library (without extension) which must be loaded before ode is called. See package vignette "compiledCode" for more details.</p> |
| parms  | parameters passed to func.   |
| method | <p>the integrator to use, either a <b>function</b> that performs integration, or a <b>list</b> of class <code>rkMethod</code>, or a <b>string</b> ("lsoda", "lsode", "lsodes", "lsodar", "vode", "daspk", "euler", "rk4", "ode23", "ode45", "radau", "bdf", "bdf_d", "adams", "impAdams" or "impAdams_d", "iteration"). Options "bdf", "bdf_d", "adams", "impAdams" or "impAdams_d" are the backward differentiation formula, the BDF with diagonal representation of the Jacobian, the (explicit) Adams and the implicit Adams method, and the implicit Adams method with diagonal representation of the Jacobian respectively (see details). The default integrator used is <code>lsoda</code>.</p>  |

	Method "iteration" is special in that here the function func should return the new value of the state variables rather than the rate of change. This can be used for individual based models, for difference equations, or in those cases where the integration is performed within func). See last example.
x	an object of class deSolve, as returned by the integrators, and to be printed or to be subsetted.
object	an object of class deSolve, as returned by the integrators, and whose summary is to be calculated. In contrast to R's default, this returns a data.frame. It returns one summary column for a multi-dimensional variable.
which	the name(s) or the index to the variables whose summary should be estimated. Default = all variables.
select	which variable/columns to be selected.
subset	logical expression indicating elements or rows to keep when calculating a summary: missing values are taken as FALSE
...	additional arguments passed to the integrator or to the methods.

### Details

This is simply a wrapper around the various ode solvers.

See package vignette for information about specifying the model in compiled code.

See the selected integrator for the additional options.

The default integrator used is [lsoda](#).

The option method = "bdf" provides a handle to the backward differentiation formula (it is equal to using method = "lsode"). It is best suited to solve stiff (systems of) equations.

The option method = "bdf\_d" selects the backward differentiation formula that uses Jacobi-Newton iteration (neglecting the off-diagonal elements of the Jacobian (it is equal to using method = "lsode", mf = 23). It is best suited to solve stiff (systems of) equations.

method = "adams" triggers the Adams method that uses functional iteration (no Jacobian used); (equal to method = "lsode", mf = 10. It is often the best choice for solving non-stiff (systems of) equations. Note: when functional iteration is used, the method is often said to be explicit, although it is in fact implicit.

method = "impAdams" selects the implicit Adams method that uses Newton- Raphson iteration (equal to method = "lsode", mf = 12.

method = "impAdams\_d" selects the implicit Adams method that uses Jacobi- Newton iteration, i.e. neglecting all off-diagonal elements (equal to method = "lsode", mf = 13.

For very stiff systems, method = "daspk" may outperform method = "bdf".

### Value

A matrix of class deSolve with up to as many rows as elements in times and as many columns as elements in y plus the number of "global" values returned in the second element of the return from func, plus an additional column (the first) for the time value. There will be one row for each element in times unless the integrator returns with an unrecoverable error. If y has a names attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

**Author(s)**

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

**See Also**

- [plot.deSolve](#) for plotting the outputs,
- [dede](#) general solver for delay differential equations
- [ode.band](#) for solving models with a banded Jacobian,
- [ode.1D](#) for integrating 1-D models,
- [ode.2D](#) for integrating 2-D models,
- [ode.3D](#) for integrating 3-D models,
- [aquaphy](#), [ccl4model](#), where ode is used,
- [lsoda](#), [lsode](#), [lsodes](#), [lsodar](#), [vode](#), [daspk](#), [radau](#),
- [rk](#), [rkMethod](#) for additional Runge-Kutta methods,
- [forcings](#) and [events](#),
- [diagnostics](#) to print diagnostic messages.

**Examples**

```
## =====
## Example1: Predator-Prey Lotka-Volterra model (with logistic prey)
## =====

LVmod <- function(Time, State, Pars) {
  with(as.list(c(State, Pars)), {
    Ingestion <- rIng * Prey * Predator
    GrowthPrey <- rGrow * Prey * (1 - Prey/K)
    MortPredator <- rMort * Predator

    dPrey <- GrowthPrey - Ingestion
    dPredator <- Ingestion * assEff - MortPredator

    return(list(c(dPrey, dPredator)))
  })
}

pars <- c(rIng = 0.2, # /day, rate of ingestion
          rGrow = 1.0, # /day, growth rate of prey
          rMort = 0.2, # /day, mortality rate of predator
          assEff = 0.5, # -, assimilation efficiency
          K = 10) # mmol/m3, carrying capacity

yini <- c(Prey = 1, Predator = 2)
times <- seq(0, 200, by = 1)
out <- ode(yini, times, LVmod, pars)
summary(out)

## Default plot method
```

```

plot(out)

## User specified plotting
matplot(out[ , 1], out[ , 2:3], type = "l", xlab = "time", ylab = "Conc",
        main = "Lotka-Volterra", lwd = 2)
legend("topright", c("prey", "predator"), col = 1:2, lty = 1:2)

## =====
## Example2: Substrate-Producer-Consumer Lotka-Volterra model
## =====

## Note:
## Function sigimp passed as an argument (input) to model
## (see also lsoda and rk examples)

SPCmod <- function(t, x, parms, input) {
  with(as.list(c(parms, x)), {
    import <- input(t)
    dS <- import - b*S*P + g*C      # substrate
    dP <- c*S*P - d*C*P            # producer
    dC <- e*P*C - f*C             # consumer
    res <- c(dS, dP, dC)
    list(res)
  })
}

## The parameters
parms <- c(b = 0.001, c = 0.1, d = 0.1, e = 0.1, f = 0.1, g = 0.0)

## vector of timesteps
times <- seq(0, 200, length = 101)

## external signal with rectangle impulse
signal <- data.frame(times = times,
                    import = rep(0, length(times)))

signal$import[signal$times >= 10 & signal$times <= 11] <- 0.2

sigimp <- approxfun(signal$times, signal$import, rule = 2)

## Start values for steady state
xstart <- c(S = 1, P = 1, C = 1)

## Solve model
out <- ode(y = xstart, times = times,
          func = SPCmod, parms = parms, input = sigimp)

## Default plot method
plot(out)

## User specified plotting
mf <- par(mfrow = c(1, 2))
matplot(out[,1], out[,2:4], type = "l", xlab = "time", ylab = "state")

```

```

legend("topright", col = 1:3, lty = 1:3, legend = c("S", "P", "C"))
plot(out[, "P"], out[, "C"], type = "l", lwd = 2, xlab = "producer",
      ylab = "consumer")
par(mfrow = mf)

## =====
## Example3: Discrete time model - using method = "iteration"
##           The host-parasitoid model from Soetaert and Herman, 2009,
##           Springer - p. 284.
## =====

Parasite <- function(t, y, ks) {
  P <- y[1]
  H <- y[2]
  f   <- A * P / (ks + H)
  Pnew <- H * (1 - exp(-f))
  Hnew <- H * exp(rH * (1 - H) - f)

  list (c(Pnew, Hnew))
}
rH <- 2.82 # rate of increase
A   <- 100 # attack rate
ks  <- 15  # half-saturation density

out <- ode(func = Parasite, y = c(P = 0.5, H = 0.5), times = 0:50, parms = ks,
           method = "iteration")

out2 <- ode(func = Parasite, y = c(P = 0.5, H = 0.5), times = 0:50, parms = 25,
            method = "iteration")

out3 <- ode(func = Parasite, y = c(P = 0.5, H = 0.5), times = 0:50, parms = 35,
            method = "iteration")

## Plot all 3 scenarios in one figure
plot(out, out2, out3, lty = 1, lwd = 2)

## Same like "out", but *output* every two steps
## hini = 1 ensures that the same *internal* timestep of 1 is used
outb <- ode(func = Parasite, y = c(P = 0.5, H = 0.5),
            times = seq(0, 50, 2), hini = 1, parms = ks,
            method = "iteration")
plot(out, outb, type = c("l", "p"))

## Not run:
## =====
## Example4: Playing with the Jacobian options - see e.g. lsoda help page
##
## IMPORTANT: The following example is temporarily broken because of
##            incompatibility with R 3.0 on some systems.
##            A fix is on the way.
## =====

## a stiff equation, exponential decay, run 500 times

```

```

stiff <- function(t, y, p) { # y and r are a 500-valued vector
  list(- r * y)
}

N <- 500
r <- runif(N, 15, 20)
yini <- runif(N, 1, 40)

times <- 0:10

## Using the default
print(system.time(
  out <- ode(y = yini, parms = NULL, times = times, func = stiff)
))
# diagnostics(out) shows that the method used = bdf (2), so it is stiff

## Specify that the Jacobian is banded, with nonzero values on the
## diagonal, i.e. the bandwidth up and down = 0

print(system.time(
  out2 <- ode(y = yini, parms = NULL, times = times, func = stiff,
             jactype = "bandint", bandup = 0, banddown = 0)
))

## Now we also specify the Jacobian function

jacob <- function(t, y, p) -r

print(system.time(
  out3 <- ode(y = yini, parms = NULL, times = times, func = stiff,
             jactfunc = jacob, jactype = "bandusr",
             bandup = 0, banddown = 0)
))
## The larger the value of N, the larger the time gain...

## End(Not run)

```

---

ode.1D

---

*Solver For Multicomponent 1-D Ordinary Differential Equations*


---

### Description

Solves a system of ordinary differential equations resulting from 1-Dimensional partial differential equations that have been converted to ODEs by numerical differencing.

### Usage

```

ode.1D(y, times, func, parms, nspec = NULL, dimens = NULL,
method= c("lsoda", "lsode", "lsodes", "lsodar", "vode", "daspk",
"euler", "rk4", "ode23", "ode45", "radau", "bdf", "adams", "impAdams",

```

```
"iteration"),
names = NULL, bandwidth = 1, restructure = FALSE, ...)
```

### Arguments

y	the initial (state) values for the ODE system, a vector. If y has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.
times	time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of times must be the initial time.
func	<p>either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the model definition) at time t, or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library.</p> <p>If func is an R-function, it must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code>. t is the current time point in the integration, y is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values y has a names attribute, the names will be available inside func. parms is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.</p> <p>The return value of func should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of y with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in times. The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables y.</p> <p>If func is a character string then integrator lsodes will be used. See details.</p>
parms	parameters passed to func.
nspec	the number of <b>species</b> (components) in the model. If NULL, then dims should be specified.
dims	the number of <b>boxes</b> in the model. If NULL, then nspec should be specified.
method	<p>the integrator. Use "vode", "lsode", "lsoda", "lsodar", "daspk", or "lsodes" if the model is very stiff; "impAdams" or "radau" may be best suited for mildly stiff problems; "euler", "rk4", "ode23", "ode45", "adams" are most efficient for non-stiff problems. Also allowed is to pass an integrator function. Use one of the other Runge-Kutta methods via rkMethod. For instance, <code>method = rkMethod("ode45ck")</code> will trigger the Cash-Karp method of order 4(5).</p> <p>Method "iteration" is special in that here the function func should return the new value of the state variables rather than the rate of change. This can be used for individual based models, for difference equations, or in those cases where the integration is performed within func)</p>
names	the names of the components; used for plotting.
bandwidth	the number of adjacent boxes over which transport occurs. Normally equal to 1 (box i only interacts with box i-1, and i+1). Values larger than 1 will not work with <code>method = "lsodes"</code> . Ignored if the method is explicit.
restructure	whether or not the Jacobian should be restructured. Only used if the method is an integrator function. Should be TRUE if the method is implicit, FALSE if explicit.
...	additional arguments passed to the integrator.

## Details

This is the method of choice for multi-species 1-dimensional models, that are only subjected to transport between adjacent layers.

More specifically, this method is to be used if the state variables are arranged per species:

A[1], A[2], A[3],.... B[1], B[2], B[3],.... (for species A, B))

Two methods are implemented.

- The default method rearranges the state variables as A[1], B[1], ... A[2], B[2], ... A[3], B[3], .... This reformulation leads to a banded Jacobian with (upper and lower) half bandwidth = number of species.

Then the selected integrator solves the banded problem.

- The second method uses `lsodes`. Based on the dimension of the problem, the method first calculates the sparsity pattern of the Jacobian, under the assumption that transport is only occurring between adjacent layers. Then `lsodes` is called to solve the problem.

As `lsodes` is used to integrate, it may be necessary to specify the length of the real work array, `lrw`.

Although a reasonable guess of `lrw` is made, it is possible that this will be too low. In this case, `ode.1D` will return with an error message telling the size of the work array actually needed. In the second try then, set `lrw` equal to this number.

For instance, if you get the error:

```
DLSODES- RWORK length is insufficient to proceed.
Length needed is .ge. LENRW (=I1), exceeds LRW (=I2)
In above message, I1 = 27627 I2 = 25932
```

set `lrw` equal to 27627 or a higher value

If the model is specified in compiled code (in a DLL), then option 2, based on `lsodes` is the only solution method.

For single-species 1-D models, you may also use [ode.band](#).

See the selected integrator for the additional options.

## Value

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the second element of the return from `func`, plus an additional column (the first) for the time value. There will be one row for each element in `times` unless the integrator returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

The output will have the attributes `istate`, and `rstate`, two vectors with several useful elements. The first element of `istate` returns the conditions under which the last call to the integrator returned. Normal is `istate = 2`. If `verbose = TRUE`, the settings of `istate` and `rstate` will be written to the screen. See the help for the selected integrator for details.

## Note

It is advisable though not mandatory to specify **both** `nspec` and `dimens`. In this case, the solver can check whether the input makes sense (i.e. if `nspec * dimens == length(y)`).



**Author(s)**

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

**See Also**

- [ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,
- [ode.band](#) for integrating models with a banded Jacobian
- [ode.2D](#) for integrating 2-D models
- [ode.3D](#) for integrating 3-D models
- [lsodes](#), [lsode](#), [lsoda](#), [lsodar](#), [vode](#) for the integration options.

[diagnostics](#) to print diagnostic messages.

**Examples**

```
## =====
## example 1
## a predator and its prey diffusing on a flat surface
## in concentric circles
## 1-D model with using cylindrical coordinates
## Lotka-Volterra type biology
## =====

## =====
## Model equations
## =====

lvmod <- function (time, state, parms, N, rr, ri, dr, dri) {
  with (as.list(parms), {
    PREY <- state[1:N]
    PRED <- state[(N+1):(2*N)]

    ## Fluxes due to diffusion
    ## at internal and external boundaries: zero gradient
    FluxPrey <- -Da * diff(c(PREY[1], PREY, PREY[N]))/dri
    FluxPred <- -Da * diff(c(PRED[1], PRED, PRED[N]))/dri

    ## Biology: Lotka-Volterra model
    Ingestion <- rIng * PREY * PRED
    GrowthPrey <- rGrow * PREY * (1-PREY/cap)
    MortPredator <- rMort * PRED

    ## Rate of change = Flux gradient + Biology
    dPREY <- -diff(ri * FluxPrey)/rr/dr +
      GrowthPrey - Ingestion
    dPRED <- -diff(ri * FluxPred)/rr/dr +
      Ingestion * assEff - MortPredator

    return (list(c(dPREY, dPRED)))
  })
}
```

```

## =====
## Model application
## =====

## model parameters:

R <- 20                # total radius of surface, m
N <- 100               # 100 concentric circles
dr <- R/N              # thickness of each layer
r <- seq(dr/2,by = dr,len = N) # distance of center to mid-layer
ri <- seq(0,by = dr,len = N+1) # distance to layer interface
dri <- dr              # dispersion distances

parms <- c(Da = 0.05,   # m2/d, dispersion coefficient
           rIng = 0.2,  # /day, rate of ingestion
           rGrow = 1.0, # /day, growth rate of prey
           rMort = 0.2, # /day, mortality rate of pred
           assEff = 0.5, # -, assimilation efficiency
           cap = 10)    # density, carrying capacity

## Initial conditions: both present in central circle (box 1) only
state <- rep(0, 2 * N)
state[1] <- state[N + 1] <- 10

## RUNNING the model:
times <- seq(0, 200, by = 1) # output wanted at these time intervals

## the model is solved by the two implemented methods:
## 1. Default: banded reformulation
print(system.time(
  out <- ode.1D(y = state, times = times, func = lvmod, parms = parms,
              nspec = 2, names = c("PREY", "PRED"),
              N = N, rr = r, ri = ri, dr = dr, dri = dri)
))

## 2. Using sparse method
print(system.time(
  out2 <- ode.1D(y = state, times = times, func = lvmod, parms = parms,
               nspec = 2, names = c("PREY","PRED"),
               N = N, rr = r, ri = ri, dr = dr, dri = dri,
               method = "lsodes")
))

## =====
## Plotting output
## =====
# the data in 'out' consist of: 1st col times, 2-N+1: the prey
# N+2:2*N+1: predators

PREY <- out[, 2:(N + 1)]

filled.contour(x = times, y = r, PREY, color = topo.colors,

```

```

        xlab = "time, days", ylab = "Distance, m",
        main = "Prey density")
# similar:
image(out, which = "PREY", grid = r, xlab = "time, days",
      legend = TRUE, ylab = "Distance, m", main = "Prey density")

image(out2, grid = r)

# summaries of 1-D variables
summary(out)

# 1-D plots:
matplot.1D(out, type = "l", subset = time == 10)
matplot.1D(out, type = "l", subset = time > 10 & time < 20)

## =====
## Example 2.
## Biochemical Oxygen Demand (BOD) and oxygen (O2) dynamics
## in a river
## =====

## =====
## Model equations
## =====
O2BOD <- function(t, state, pars) {
  BOD <- state[1:N]
  O2 <- state[(N+1):(2*N)]

  ## BOD dynamics
  FluxBOD <- v * c(BOD_0, BOD) # fluxes due to water transport
  FluxO2 <- v * c(O2_0, O2)

  BODrate <- r * BOD # 1-st order consumption

  ## rate of change = flux gradient - consumption + reaeration (O2)
  dBOD <- -diff(FluxBOD)/dx - BODrate
  dO2 <- -diff(FluxO2)/dx - BODrate + p * (O2sat-O2)

  return(list(c(dBOD = dBOD, dO2 = dO2)))
}

## =====
## Model application
## =====
## parameters
dx <- 25 # grid size of 25 meters
v <- 1e3 # velocity, m/day
x <- seq(dx/2, 5000, by = dx) # m, distance from river
N <- length(x)
r <- 0.05 # /day, first-order decay of BOD
p <- 0.5 # /day, air-sea exchange rate
O2sat <- 300 # mmol/m3 saturated oxygen conc

```

```

O2_0   <- 200      # mmol/m3 riverine oxygen conc
BOD_0  <- 1000     # mmol/m3 riverine BOD concentration

## initial conditions:
state <- c(rep(200, N), rep(200, N))
times <- seq(0, 20, by = 0.1)

## running the model
## step 1 : model spinup
out <- ode.1D(y = state, times, O2BOD, parms = NULL,
             nspec = 2, names = c("BOD", "O2"))

## =====
## Plotting output
## =====
## select oxygen (first column of out:time, then BOD, then O2
O2   <- out[, (N + 2):(2 * N + 1)]
color = topo.colors

filled.contour(x = times, y = x, O2, color = color, nlevels = 50,
              xlab = "time, days", ylab = "Distance from river, m",
              main = "Oxygen")

## or quicker plotting:
image(out, grid = x, xlab = "time, days", ylab = "Distance from river, m")

```

---

ode.2D

---

*Solver for 2-Dimensional Ordinary Differential Equations*


---

## Description

Solves a system of ordinary differential equations resulting from 2-Dimensional partial differential equations that have been converted to ODEs by numerical differencing.

## Usage

```

ode.2D(y, times, func, parms, nspec = NULL, dimens,
       method= c("lsodes", "euler", "rk4", "ode23", "ode45", "adams", "iteration"),
       names = NULL, cyclicBnd = NULL, ...)

```

## Arguments

**y** the initial (state) values for the ODE system, a vector. If y has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.

**times** time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of times must be the initial time.

func	<p>either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the model definition) at time <code>t</code>, or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library.</p> <p>If <code>func</code> is an R-function, it must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code>. <code>t</code> is the current time point in the integration, <code>y</code> is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values <code>y</code> has a <code>names</code> attribute, the names will be available inside <code>func</code>. <code>parms</code> is a vector or list of parameters; <code>...</code> (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.</p> <p>The return value of <code>func</code> should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of <code>y</code> with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in times. The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables <code>y</code>.</p>
parms	parameters passed to <code>func</code> .
nspec	the number of <b>species</b> (components) in the model.
dimens	2-valued vector with the number of <b>boxes</b> in two dimensions in the model.
cyclicBnd	if not NULL then a number or a 2-valued vector with the dimensions where a cyclic boundary is used - 1: x-dimension, 2: y-dimension; see details.
names	the names of the components; used for plotting.
method	<p>the integrator. Use <code>"lsodes"</code> if the model is very stiff; <code>"impAdams"</code> may be best suited for mildly stiff problems; <code>"euler"</code>, <code>"rk4"</code>, <code>"ode23"</code>, <code>"ode45"</code>, <code>"adams"</code> are most efficient for non-stiff problems. Also allowed is to pass an integrator function. Use one of the other Runge-Kutta methods via <code>rkMethod</code>. For instance, <code>method = rkMethod("ode45ck")</code> will trigger the Cash-Karp method of order 4(5).</p> <p>If <code>"lsodes"</code> is used, then also the size of the work array should be specified (<code>lrw</code>) (see <a href="#">lsodes</a>).</p> <p>Method <code>"iteration"</code> is special in that here the function <code>func</code> should return the new value of the state variables rather than the rate of change. This can be used for individual based models, for difference equations, or in those cases where the integration is performed within <code>func</code></p>
...	additional arguments passed to <code>lsodes</code> .

## Details

This is the method of choice for 2-dimensional models, that are only subjected to transport between adjacent layers.

Based on the dimension of the problem, and if `lsodes` is used as the integrator, the method first calculates the sparsity pattern of the Jacobian, under the assumption that transport is only occurring between adjacent layers. Then `lsodes` is called to solve the problem.

If the model is not stiff, then it is more efficient to use one of the explicit integration routines

In some cases, a cyclic boundary condition exists. This is when the first boxes in x-or y-direction interact with the last boxes. In this case, there will be extra non-zero fringes in the Jacobian which need to be taken into account. The occurrence of cyclic boundaries can be toggled on by specifying argument `cyclicBnd`. For instance, `cyclicBnd = 1` indicates that a cyclic boundary is required

only for the x-direction, whereas `cyclicBnd = c(1,2)` imposes a cyclic boundary for both x- and y-direction. The default is no cyclic boundaries.

If `lsodes` is used to integrate, it will probably be necessary to specify the length of the real work array, `lrw`.

Although a reasonable guess of `lrw` is made, it is likely that this will be too low. In this case, `ode.2D` will return with an error message telling the size of the work array actually needed. In the second try then, set `lrw` equal to this number.

For instance, if you get the error:

```
DLSODES- RWORK length is insufficient to proceed.
Length needed is .ge. LENRW (=I1), exceeds LRW (=I2)
In above message, I1 =    27627  I2 =    25932
```

set `lrw` equal to 27627 or a higher value.

See [lsodes](#) for the additional options.

### Value

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the second element of the return from `func`, plus an additional column (the first) for the time value. There will be one row for each element in `times` unless the integrator returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

The output will have the attributes `istate`, and `rstate`, two vectors with several useful elements. The first element of `istate` returns the conditions under which the last call to the integrator returned. Normal is `istate = 2`. If `verbose = TRUE`, the settings of `istate` and `rstate` will be written to the screen. See the help for the selected integrator for details.

### Note

It is advisable though not mandatory to specify **both** `nspec` and `dimens`. In this case, the solver can check whether the input makes sense (as `nspec * dimens[1] * dimens[2] == length(y)`).

Do **not** use this method for problems that are not 2D!

### Author(s)

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

### See Also

- [ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,
- [ode.band](#) for integrating models with a banded Jacobian
- [ode.1D](#) for integrating 1-D models
- [ode.3D](#) for integrating 3-D models
- [lsodes](#) for the integration options.

[diagnostics](#) to print diagnostic messages.

## Examples

```

## =====
## A Lotka-Volterra predator-prey model with predator and prey
## dispersing in 2 dimensions
## =====

## =====
## Model definitions
## =====

lvmod2D <- function (time, state, pars, N, Da, dx) {
  NN <- N*N
  Prey <- matrix(nrow = N, ncol = N,state[1:NN])
  Pred <- matrix(nrow = N, ncol = N,state[(NN+1):(2*NN)])

  with (as.list(pars), {
    ## Biology
    dPrey <- rGrow * Prey * (1- Prey/K) - rIng * Prey * Pred
    dPred <- rIng * Prey * Pred*assEff - rMort * Pred

    zero <- rep(0, N)

    ## 1. Fluxes in x-direction; zero fluxes near boundaries
    FluxPrey <- -Da * rbind(zero,(Prey[2:N,] - Prey[1:(N-1),]), zero)/dx
    FluxPred <- -Da * rbind(zero,(Pred[2:N,] - Pred[1:(N-1),]), zero)/dx

    ## Add flux gradient to rate of change
    dPrey <- dPrey - (FluxPrey[2:(N+1),] - FluxPrey[1:N,])/dx
    dPred <- dPred - (FluxPred[2:(N+1),] - FluxPred[1:N,])/dx

    ## 2. Fluxes in y-direction; zero fluxes near boundaries
    FluxPrey <- -Da * cbind(zero,(Prey[,2:N] - Prey[,1:(N-1)]), zero)/dx
    FluxPred <- -Da * cbind(zero,(Pred[,2:N] - Pred[,1:(N-1)]), zero)/dx

    ## Add flux gradient to rate of change
    dPrey <- dPrey - (FluxPrey[,2:(N+1)] - FluxPrey[,1:N])/dx
    dPred <- dPred - (FluxPred[,2:(N+1)] - FluxPred[,1:N])/dx

    return(list(c(as.vector(dPrey), as.vector(dPred))))
  })
}

## =====
## Model applications
## =====

pars <- c(rIng = 0.2, # /day, rate of ingestion
          rGrow = 1.0, # /day, growth rate of prey
          rMort = 0.2, # /day, mortality rate of predator
          assEff = 0.5, # -, assimilation efficiency
          K = 5 ) # mmol/m3, carrying capacity

```

```

R <- 20          # total length of surface, m
N <- 50          # number of boxes in one direction
dx <- R/N        # thickness of each layer
Da <- 0.05       # m2/d, dispersion coefficient

NN <- N*N        # total number of boxes

## initial conditions
yini <- rep(0, 2*N*N)
cc <- c((NN/2):(NN/2+1)+N/2, (NN/2):(NN/2+1)-N/2)
yini[cc] <- yini[NN+cc] <- 1

## solve model (5000 state variables... use Cash-Karp Runge-Kutta method
times <- seq(0, 50, by = 1)
out <- ode.2D(y = yini, times = times, func = lvmod2D, parms = pars,
             dims = c(N, N), names = c("Prey", "Pred"),
             N = N, dx = dx, Da = Da, method = rkMethod("rk45ck"))

diagnostics(out)
summary(out)

# Mean of prey concentration at each time step
Prey <- subset(out, select = "Prey", arr = TRUE)
dim(Prey)
MeanPrey <- apply(Prey, MARGIN = 3, FUN = mean)
plot(times, MeanPrey)

## Not run:
## plot results
Col <- colorRampPalette(c("#00007F", "blue", "#007FFF", "cyan",
                          "#7FFF7F", "yellow", "#FF7F00", "red", "#7F0000"))

for (i in seq(1, length(times), by = 1))
  image(Prey[ , i],
        col = Col(100), xlab = , zlim = range(out[,2:(NN+1)]))

## similar, plotting both and adding a margin text with times:
image(out, xlab = "x", ylab = "y", mtext = paste("time = ", times))

## End(Not run)

select <- c(1, 40)
image(out, xlab = "x", ylab = "y", mtext = "Lotka-Volterra in 2-D",
      subset = select, mfrow = c(2,2), legend = TRUE)

# plot prey and pred at t = 10; first use subset to select data
prey10 <- matrix (nrow = N, ncol = N,
                 data = subset(out, select = "Prey", subset = (time == 10)))
pred10 <- matrix (nrow = N, ncol = N,
                 data = subset(out, select = "Pred", subset = (time == 10)))

```



```

mf <- par(mfrow = c(1, 2))
image(preyl0)
image(predl0)
par (mfrow = mf)

# same, using deSolve's image:
image(out, subset = (time == 10))

## =====
## An example with a cyclic boundary condition.
## Diffusion in 2-D; extra flux on 2 boundaries,
## cyclic boundary in y
## =====

diffusion2D <- function(t, Y, par) {
  y <- matrix(nrow = nx, ncol = ny, data = Y) # vector to 2-D matrix
  dY <- -r * y # consumption
  BNDx <- rep(1, nx) # boundary concentration
  BNDy <- rep(1, ny) # boundary concentration

  ## diffusion in X-direction; boundaries=imposed concentration
  Flux <- -Dx * rbind(y[1,] - BNDy, (y[2:nx,] - y[1:(nx-1),]), BNDy - y[nx,])/dx
  dY <- dY - (Flux[2:(nx+1),] - Flux[1:nx,])/dx

  ## diffusion in Y-direction
  Flux <- -Dy * cbind(y[,1] - BNDx, (y[,2:ny]-y[,1:(ny-1)]), BNDx - y[,ny])/dy
  dY <- dY - (Flux[,2:(ny+1)] - Flux[,1:ny])/dy

  ## extra flux on two sides
  dY[,1] <- dY[,1] + 10
  dY[1,] <- dY[1,] + 10

  ## and exchange between sides on y-direction
  dY[,ny] <- dY[,ny] + (y[,1] - y[,ny]) * 10
  return(list(as.vector(dY)))
}

## parameters
dy <- dx <- 1 # grid size
Dy <- Dx <- 1 # diffusion coeff, X- and Y-direction
r <- 0.05 # consumption rate

nx <- 50
ny <- 100
y <- matrix(nrow = nx, ncol = ny, 1)

## model most efficiently solved with lsodes - need to specify lrw

print(system.time(
  ST3 <- ode.2D(y, times = 1:100, func = diffusion2D, parms = NULL,
    dimens = c(nx, ny), verbose = TRUE, names = "Y",
    lrw = 400000, atol = 1e-10, rtol = 1e-10, cyclicBnd = 2)

```

```

))

# summary of 2-D variable
summary(ST3)

# plot output at t = 10
t10 <- matrix (nrow = nx, ncol = ny,
              data = subset(ST3, select = "Y", subset = (time == 10)))

persp(t10, theta = 30, border = NA, phi = 70,
      col = "lightblue", shade = 0.5, box = FALSE)

# image plot, using deSolve's image function
image(ST3, subset = time == 10, method = "persp",
      theta = 30, border = NA, phi = 70, main = "",
      col = "lightblue", shade = 0.5, box = FALSE)

## Not run:
zlim <- range(ST3[, -1])
for (i in 2:nrow(ST3)) {
  y <- matrix(nrow = nx, ncol = ny, data = ST3[i, -1])
  filled.contour(y, zlim = zlim, main = i)
}

# same
image(ST3, method = "filled.contour")

## End(Not run)

```

---

ode.3D

---

*Solver for 3-Dimensional Ordinary Differential Equations*


---

## Description

Solves a system of ordinary differential equations resulting from 3-Dimensional partial differential equations that have been converted to ODEs by numerical differencing.

## Usage

```
ode.3D(y, times, func, parms, nspec = NULL, dimens,
      method = c("lsodes", "euler", "rk4", "ode23", "ode45", "adams", "iteration"),
      names = NULL, cyclicBnd = NULL, ...)
```

## Arguments

**y** the initial (state) values for the ODE system, a vector. If y has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.

**times** time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of times must be the initial time.

func	<p>either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the model definition) at time <code>t</code>, or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library.</p> <p>If <code>func</code> is an R-function, it must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code>. <code>t</code> is the current time point in the integration, <code>y</code> is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values <code>y</code> has a <code>names</code> attribute, the names will be available inside <code>func</code>. <code>parms</code> is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.</p> <p>The return value of <code>func</code> should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of <code>y</code> with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in times. The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables <code>y</code>.</p>
parms	parameters passed to <code>func</code> .
nspec	the number of <b>species</b> (components) in the model.
dimens	3-valued vector with the number of <b>boxes</b> in three dimensions in the model.
names	the names of the components; used for plotting.
cyclicBnd	if not NULL then a number or a 3-valued vector with the dimensions where a cyclic boundary is used - 1: x-dimension, 2: y-dimension; 3: z-dimension.
method	<p>the integrator. Use "lsodes" if the model is very stiff; "impAdams" may be best suited for mildly stiff problems; "euler", "rk4", "ode23", "ode45", "adams" are most efficient for non-stiff problems. Also allowed is to pass an integrator function. Use one of the other Runge-Kutta methods via <code>rkMethod</code>. For instance, <code>method = rkMethod("ode45ck")</code> will trigger the Cash-Karp method of order 4(5).</p> <p>Method "iteration" is special in that here the function <code>func</code> should return the new value of the state variables rather than the rate of change. This can be used for individual based models, for difference equations, or in those cases where the integration is performed within <code>func</code></p>
...	additional arguments passed to <code>lsodes</code> .

### Details

This is the method of choice for 3-dimensional models, that are only subjected to transport between adjacent layers.

Based on the dimension of the problem, the method first calculates the sparsity pattern of the Jacobian, under the assumption that transport is only occurring between adjacent layers. Then `lsodes` is called to solve the problem.

As `lsodes` is used to integrate, it will probably be necessary to specify the length of the real work array, `lrw`.

Although a reasonable guess of `lrw` is made, it is likely that this will be too low.

In this case, `ode.2D` will return with an error message telling the size of the work array actually needed. In the second try then, set `lrw` equal to this number.

For instance, if you get the error:

```
DLSODES- RWORK length is insufficient to proceed.
Length needed is .ge. LENRW (=I1), exceeds LRW (=I2)
In above message, I1 =      27627  I2 =      25932
```

set `lrw` equal to 27627 or a higher value.

See [lsodes](#) for the additional options.

### Value

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the second element of the return from `func`, plus an additional column (the first) for the time value. There will be one row for each element in `times` unless the integrator returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

The output will have the attributes `istate`, and `rstate`, two vectors with several useful elements. The first element of `istate` returns the conditions under which the last call to the integrator returned. Normal is `istate = 2`. If `verbose = TRUE`, the settings of `istate` and `rstate` will be written to the screen. See the help for the selected integrator for details.

### Note

It is advisable though not mandatory to specify **both** `nspec` and `dimens`. In this case, the solver can check whether the input makes sense (as `nspec*dimens[1]*dimens[2]*dimens[3] == length(y)`).

Do **not** use this method for problems that are not 3D!

### Author(s)

Karline Soetaert <[karline.soetaert@nioz.nl](mailto:karline.soetaert@nioz.nl)>

### See Also

- [ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,
- [ode.band](#) for integrating models with a banded Jacobian
- [ode.1D](#) for integrating 1-D models
- [ode.2D](#) for integrating 2-D models
- [lsodes](#) for the integration options.

[diagnostics](#) to print diagnostic messages.

### Examples

```
## =====
## Diffusion in 3-D; imposed boundary conditions
## =====
diffusion3D <- function(t, Y, par) {

  ## function to bind two matrices to an array
  mbind <- function (Mat1, Array, Mat2, along = 1) {
    dimens <- dim(Array) + c(0, 0, 2)
```

```

    if (along == 3)
      array(dim = dimens, data = c(Mat1, Array, Mat2))
    else if (along == 1)
      aperm(array(dim = dimens,
        data=c(Mat1, aperm(Array, c(3, 2, 1)), Mat2)), c(3, 2, 1))
    else if (along == 2)
      aperm(array(dim = dimens,
        data = c(Mat1, aperm(Array, c(1, 3, 2)), Mat2)), c(1, 3, 2))
  }

yy <- array(dim=c(n, n, n), data = Y)      # vector to 3-D array
dY <- -r*yy                               # consumption
BND <- matrix(nrow = n, ncol = n, data = 1) # boundary concentration

## diffusion in x-direction
## new array including boundary concentrations in X-direction
BNDx <- mbind(BND, yy, BND, along = 1)
## diffusive Flux
Flux <- -Dx * (BNDx[2:(n+2),,] - BNDx[1:(n+1),,])/dx
## rate of change = - flux gradient
dY[] <- dY[] - (Flux[2:(n+1),,] - Flux[1:n,,])/dx

## diffusion in y-direction
BNDy <- mbind(BND, yy, BND, along = 2)
Flux <- -Dy * (BNDy[,2:(n+2),] - BNDy[,1:(n+1),])/dy
dY[] <- dY[] - (Flux[,2:(n+1),] - Flux[,1:n,])/dy

## diffusion in z-direction
BNDz <- mbind(BND, yy, BND, along = 3)
Flux <- -Dz * (BNDz[, ,2:(n+2)] - BNDz[, ,1:(n+1)])/dz
dY[] <- dY[] - (Flux[, ,2:(n+1)] - Flux[, ,1:n])/dz

return(list(as.vector(dY)))
}

## parameters
dy <- dx <- dz <-1 # grid size
Dy <- Dx <- Dz <-1 # diffusion coeff, X- and Y-direction
r <- 0.025         # consumption rate

n <- 10
y <- array(dim=c(n,n,n),data=10.)

## use lsodes, the default (for n>20, Runge-Kutta more efficient)
print(system.time(
  RES <- ode.3D(y, func = diffusion3D, parms = NULL, dimens = c(n, n, n),
    times = 1:20, lrw = 120000, atol = 1e-10,
    rtol = 1e-10, verbose = TRUE)
))

y <- array(dim = c(n, n, n), data = RES[nrow(RES), -1])
filled.contour(y[, , n/2], color.palette = terrain.colors)

```

```
summary(RES)

## Not run:
for (i in 2:nrow(RES)) {
  y <- array(dim=c(n,n,n),data=RES[i,-1])
  filled.contour(y[, ,n/2],main=i,color.palette=terrain.colors)
}

## End(Not run)
```

---

ode.band	<i>Solver for Ordinary Differential Equations; Assumes a Banded Jacobian</i>
----------	--

---

### Description

Solves a system of ordinary differential equations.

Assumes a banded Jacobian matrix, but does not rearrange the state variables (in contrast to ode.1D). Suitable for 1-D models that include transport only between adjacent layers and that model only one species.

### Usage

```
ode.band(y, times, func, parms, nspec = NULL, dimens = NULL,
  bandup = nspec, banddown = nspec, method = "lsode", names = NULL,
  ...)
```

### Arguments

y	the initial (state) values for the ODE system, a vector. If y has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.
times	time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of times must be the initial time.
func	either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the model definition) at time t, or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library. If func is an R-function, it must be defined as: func <- function(t, y, parms, ...). t is the current time point in the integration, y is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values y has a names attribute, the names will be available inside func. parms is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function. The return value of func should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of y with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in times. The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables y.
parms	parameters passed to func.

nspec	the number of <i>*species*</i> (components) in the model.
dimens	the number of <b>boxes</b> in the model. If NULL, then nspec should be specified.
bandup	the number of nonzero bands above the Jacobian diagonal.
banddown	the number of nonzero bands below the Jacobian diagonal.
method	the integrator to use, one of "vode", "lsode", "lsoda", "lsodar", "radau".
names	the names of the components; used for plotting.
...	additional arguments passed to the integrator.

### Details

This is the method of choice for single-species 1-D reactive transport models.

For multi-species 1-D models, this method can only be used if the state variables are arranged per box, per species (e.g. A[1], B[1], A[2], B[2], A[3], B[3], ... for species A, B). By default, the **model** function will have the species arranged as A[1], A[2], A[3], ... B[1], B[2], B[3], ... in this case, use ode.1D.

See the selected integrator for the additional options.

### Value

A matrix of class deSolve with up to as many rows as elements in times and as many columns as elements in y plus the number of "global" values returned in the second element of the return from func, plus an additional column (the first) for the time value. There will be one row for each element in times unless the integrator returns with an unrecoverable error. If y has a names attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

The output will have the attributes istate and rstate, two vectors with several elements. See the help for the selected integrator for details. the first element of istate returns the conditions under which the last call to the integrator returned. Normal is istate = 2. If verbose = TRUE, the settings of istate and rstate will be written to the screen.

### Author(s)

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

### See Also

- [ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,
- [ode.1D](#) for integrating 1-D models
- [ode.2D](#) for integrating 2-D models
- [ode.3D](#) for integrating 3-D models
- [lsode](#), [lsoda](#), [lsodar](#), [vode](#) for the integration options.

[diagnostics](#) to print diagnostic messages.

## Examples

```
## =====
## The Aphid model from Soetaert and Herman, 2009.
## A practical guide to ecological modelling.
## Using R as a simulation platform. Springer.
## =====

## 1-D diffusion model

## =====
## Model equations
## =====
Aphid <- function(t, APHIDS, parameters) {
  deltax <- c(0.5*delx, rep(delx, numboxes-1), 0.5*delx)
  Flux <- -D*diff(c(0, APHIDS, 0))/deltax
  dAPHIDS <- -diff(Flux)/delx + APHIDS*r

  list(dAPHIDS) # the output
}

## =====
## Model application
## =====

## the model parameters:
D <- 0.3 # m2/day diffusion rate
r <- 0.01 # /day net growth rate
delx <- 1 # m thickness of boxes
numboxes <- 60

## distance of boxes on plant, m, 1 m intervals
Distance <- seq(from = 0.5, by = delx, length.out = numboxes)

## Initial conditions, ind/m2
## aphids present only on two central boxes
APHIDS <- rep(0, times = numboxes)
APHIDS[30:31] <- 1
state <- c(APHIDS = APHIDS) # initialise state variables

## RUNNING the model:
times <- seq(0, 200, by = 1) # output wanted at these time intervals
out <- ode.band(state, times, Aphid, parms = 0,
               nspec = 1, names = "Aphid")

## =====
## Plotting output
## =====
image(out, grid = Distance, method = "filled.contour",
      xlab = "time, days", ylab = "Distance on plant, m",
      main = "Aphid density on a row of plants")

matplot.1D(out, grid = Distance, type = "l",
```



```

subset = time %in% seq(0, 200, by = 10))

# add an observed dataset to 1-D plot (make sure to use correct name):
data <- cbind(dist = c(0,10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60),
              Aphid = c(0,0.1,0.25,0.5,0.25,0.1,0))

matplot.1D(out, grid = Distance, type = "l",
           subset = time %in% seq(0, 200, by = 10),
           obs = data, obspar = list(pch = 18, cex = 2, col="red"))
## Not run:
plot.1D(out, grid = Distance, type = "l")

## End(Not run)

```

---

plot.deSolve

*Plot, Image and Histogram Method for deSolve Objects*


---

## Description

Plot the output of numeric integration routines.

## Usage

```

## S3 method for class 'deSolve'
plot(x, ..., select = NULL, which = select, ask = NULL,
     obs = NULL, obspar = list(), subset = NULL)
## S3 method for class 'deSolve'
hist(x, select = 1:(ncol(x)-1), which = select, ask = NULL,
     subset = NULL, ...)
## S3 method for class 'deSolve'
image(x, select = NULL, which = select, ask = NULL,
      add.contour = FALSE, grid = NULL,
      method = "image", legend = FALSE, subset = NULL, ...)
## S3 method for class 'deSolve'
subset(x, subset = NULL, select = NULL,
       which = select, arr = FALSE, ...)

plot.1D (x, ..., select = NULL, which = select, ask = NULL,
        obs = NULL, obspar = list(), grid = NULL,
        xyswap = FALSE, delay = 0, vertical = FALSE, subset = NULL)

matplot.0D(x, ..., select = NULL, which = select,
          obs = NULL, obspar = list(), subset = NULL,
          legend = list(x = "topright"))

matplot.1D(x, select = NULL, which = select, ask = NULL,
          obs = NULL, obspar = list(), grid = NULL,
          xyswap = FALSE, vertical = FALSE, subset = NULL, ...)

```

**Arguments**

x	<p>an object of class <code>deSolve</code>, as returned by the integrators, and to be plotted.</p> <p>For <code>plot.deSolve</code>, it is allowed to pass several objects of class <code>deSolve</code> after <code>x</code> (unnamed) - see second example.</p>
which	<p>the name(s) or the index to the variables that should be plotted or selected. Default = all variables, except time. For use with <code>matplot.0D</code> and <code>matplot.1D</code>, <code>which</code> or <code>select</code> can be a list, with vectors, each referring to a separate y-axis.</p>
select	<p>which variable/columns to be selected. This is added for consistency with the R-function <code>subset</code>.</p>
subset	<p>either a logical expression indicating elements or rows to keep in <code>select</code>, or a vector of integers denoting the indices of the elements over which to loop. Missing values are taken as FALSE</p>
ask	<p>logical; if TRUE, the user is <i>asked</i> before each plot, if NULL the user is only asked if more than one page of plots is necessary and the current graphics device is set interactive, see <code>par(ask)</code> and <code>dev.interactive</code>.</p>
add.contour	<p>if TRUE, will add contours to the image plot.</p>
method	<p>the name of the plotting method to use, one of "image", "filled.contour", "persp", "contour".</p>
grid	<p>only for image plots and for <code>plot.1D</code>: the 1-D grid as a vector (for output generated with <code>ode.1D</code>), or the x- and y-grid, as a list (for output generated with <code>ode.2D</code>).</p>
xyswap	<p>if TRUE, then x-and y-values are swapped and the y-axis is from top to bottom. Useful for drawing vertical profiles.</p>
vertical	<p>if TRUE, then 1. x-and y-values are swapped, the y-axis is from top to bottom, the x-axis is on top, margin 3 and the main title gets the value of the x-axis. Useful for drawing vertical profiles; see example 2.</p>
delay	<p>adds a delay (in milliseconds) between consecutive plots of <code>plot.1D</code> to enable animations.</p>
obs	<p>a <code>data.frame</code> or <code>matrix</code> with "observed data" that will be added as points to the plots. <code>obs</code> can also be a list with multiple <code>data.frames</code> and/or matrices containing observed data.</p> <p>By default the first column of an observed data set should contain the time-variable. The other columns contain the observed values and they should have names that are known in <code>x</code>.</p> <p>If the first column of <code>obs</code> consists of factors or characters (strings), then it is assumed that the data are presented in long (database) format, where the first three columns contain (name, time, value).</p> <p>If <code>obs</code> is not NULL and <code>which</code> is NULL, then the variables, common to both <code>obs</code> and <code>x</code> will be plotted.</p>
obspar	<p>additional graphics arguments passed to <code>points</code>, for plotting the observed data. If <code>obs</code> is a list containing multiple observed data sets, then the graphics arguments can be a vector or a list (e.g. for <code>xlim</code>, <code>ylim</code>), specifying each data set separately.</p>

legend	if TRUE, a color legend will be drawn on the right of each image. For use with <code>matplot.0D</code> and <code>matplot.1D</code> : a list with arguments passed to R-function <a href="#">legend</a> .
arr	if TRUE, and the output is from a 2-D or 3-D model, an array will be returned with <code>dimension = c(dimension of selected variable, nrow(x))</code> . When <code>arr=TRUE</code> then only one variable can be selected. When the output is from a 0-D or 1-D model, then this argument is ignored.
...	additional arguments. The graphical arguments are passed to <a href="#">plot.default</a> , <a href="#">image</a> or <a href="#">hist</a> For <code>plot.deSolve</code> , and <code>plot.1D</code> , the dots may contain other objects of class <code>deSolve</code> , as returned by the integrators, and to be plotted on the same graphs as <code>x</code> - see second example. In this case, <code>x</code> and these other objects should be compatible, i.e. the column names should be the same. For <code>plot.deSolve</code> , the arguments after ... must be matched exactly.

## Details

The number of panels per page is automatically determined up to 3 x 3 (`par(mfrow = c(3, 3))`). This default can be overwritten by specifying user-defined settings for `mfrow` or `mfcoll`. Set `mfrow` equal to `NULL` to avoid the plotting function to change user-defined `mfrow` or `mfcoll` settings.

Other graphical parameters can be passed as well. Parameters are vectorized, either according to the number of plots (`xlab`, `ylab`, `main`, `sub`, `xlim`, `ylim`, `log`, `asp`, `ann`, `axes`, `frame.plot`, `panel.first`, `panel.last`, `cex.lab`, `cex.axis`, `cex.main`) or according to the number of lines within one plot (other parameters e.g. `col`, `lty`, `lwd` etc.) so it is possible to assign specific axis labels to individual plots, resp. different plotting style. Plotting parameter `ylim`, or `xlim` can also be a list to assign different axis limits to individual plots.

Similarly, the graphical parameters for observed data, as passed by `obspar` can be vectorized, according to the number of observed data sets.

Image plots will only work for 1-D and 2-D variables, as solved with [ode.1D](#) and [ode.2D](#). In the first case, an image with `times` as x- and the `grid` as y-axis will be created. In the second case, an x-y plot will be created, for all times. Unless `ask = FALSE`, the user will be asked to confirm page changes. Via argument `mtext`, it is possible to label each page in case of 2D output.

For images, it is possible to pass an argument `method` which can take the values "image" (default), "filled.contour", "contour" or "persp", in order to use the respective plotting method.

`plot` and `matplot.0D` will always have `times` on the x-axis. For problems solved with `ode.1D`, it may be more useful to use `plot.1D` or `matplot.1D` which will plot how spatial variables change with time. These plots will have the `grid` on the x-axis.

## Value

Function `subset` called with `arr = FALSE` will return a matrix with up to as many rows as selected by `subset` and as many columns as selected variables.

When `arr = TRUE` then an array will be outputted with dimensions equal to the dimension of the selected variable, augmented with the number of rows selected by `subset`. This means that the last dimension points to `times`.

Function `subset` also has an attribute that contains the `times` selected.

**See Also**

[deSolve](#), [ode](#), [print.deSolve](#),  
[hist](#) [image](#) [matplot](#), [plot.default](#) for the underlying functions from package **graphics**,  
[ode.2D](#), for an example of using subset with `arr = TRUE`.

**Examples**

```
## =====
## Example 1. A Predator-Prey model with 4 species in matrix formulation
## =====

LVmatrix <- function(t, n, parms) {
  with(parms, {
    dn <- r * n + n * (A %*% n)
    return(list(c(dn)))
  })
}
parms <- list(
  r = c(r1 = 0.1, r2 = 0.1, r3 = -0.1, r4 = -0.1),
  A = matrix(c(0.0, 0.0, -0.2, 0.01,      # prey 1
              0.0, 0.0, 0.02, -0.1,      # prey 2
              0.2, 0.02, 0.0, 0.0,       # predator 1; prefers prey 1
              0.01, 0.1, 0.0, 0.0),      # predator 2; prefers prey 2
            nrow = 4, ncol = 4, byrow=TRUE)
)
times <- seq(from = 0, to = 500, by = 0.1)
y      <- c(pre1 = 1, prey2 = 1, pred1 = 2, pred2 = 2)

out <- ode(y, times, LVmatrix, parms)

## Basic line plot
plot(out, type = "l")

## User-specified axis labels
plot(out, type = "l", ylab = c("Prey 1", "Prey 2", "Pred 1", "Pred 2"),
      xlab = "Time (d)", main = "Time Series")

## Set user-defined mfrow
pm <- par (mfrow = c(2, 2))

## "mfrow=NULL" keeps user-defined mfrow
plot(out, which = c("prey1", "pred2"), mfrow = NULL, type = "l", lwd = 2)

plot(out[, "prey1"], out[, "pred1"], xlab="prey1",
      ylab = "pred1", type = "l", lwd = 2)
plot(out[, "prey2"], out[, "pred2"], xlab = "prey2",
      ylab = "pred2", type = "l", lwd = 2)

## restore graphics parameters
par ("mfrow" = pm)
```

```

## Plot all in one figure, using matplot
matplot.0D(out, lwd = 2)

## Split y-variables in two groups
matplot.0D(out, which = list(c(1,3), c(2,4)),
           lty = c(1,2,1,2), col=c(4,4,5,5),
           ylab = c("prey1,pred1", "prey2,pred2"))

## =====
## Example 2. Add second and third output, and observations
## =====

# New runs with different parameter settings
parms2      <- parms
parms2$r[1] <- 0.2
out2 <- ode(y, times, LVmatrix, parms2)

# New runs with different parameter settings
parms3      <- parms
parms3$r[1] <- 0.05
out3 <- ode(y, times, LVmatrix, parms3)

# plot all three outputs
plot(out, out2, out3, type = "l",
     ylab = c("Prey 1", "Prey 2", "Pred 1", "Pred 2"),
     xlab = "Time (d)", main = c("Prey 1", "Prey 2", "Pred 1", "Pred 2"),
     col = c("red", "blue", "darkred"))

## 'observed' data
obs <- as.data.frame(out[out[,1] %in% seq(10, 500, by = 30), ])

plot(out, which = "prey1", type = "l", obs = obs,
     obspar = list(pch = 18, cex = 2))

plot(out, type = "l", obs = obs, col = "red")

matplot.0D(out, which = c("prey1", "pred1"), type = "l", obs = obs)

## second set of 'observed' data and two outputs
obs2 <- as.data.frame(out2[out2[,1] %in% seq(10, 500, by = 50), ])

## manual xlim, log
plot(out, out2, type = "l", obs = list(obs, obs2), col = c("red", "blue"),
     obspar = list(pch = 18:19, cex = 2, col = c("red", "blue")),
     log = c("y", ""), which = c("prey1", "prey1"),
     xlim = list(c(100, 500), c(0, 400)))

## data in 'long' format
OBS <- data.frame(name = c(rep("prey1", 3), rep("prey2", 2)),
                  time = c(10, 100, 250, 10, 400),
                  value = c(0.05, 0.04, 0.7, 0.5, 1))

OBS

```

```

plot(out, obs = OBS, obspar = c(pch = 18, cex = 2))

# a subset only:
plot(out, subset = prey1 < 0.5, type = "p")

# Simple histogram
hist(out, col = "darkblue", breaks = 50)

hist(out, col = "darkblue", breaks = 50, subset = prey1<1 & prey2 < 1)

# different parameters per plot
hist(out, col = c("darkblue", "red", "orange", "black"),
      breaks = c(10,50))

## =====
## The Aphid model from Soetaert and Herman, 2009.
## A practical guide to ecological modelling.
## Using R as a simulation platform. Springer.
## =====

## 1-D diffusion model

## =====
## Model equations
## =====
Aphid <- function(t, APHIDS, parameters) {
  deltax <- c(0.5*delx, rep(delx, numboxes - 1), 0.5*delx)
  Flux <- -D * diff(c(0, APHIDS, 0))/deltax
  dAPHIDS <- -diff(Flux)/delx + APHIDS * r
  list(dAPHIDS, Flux = Flux)
}

## =====
## Model application
## =====

## the model parameters:
D <- 0.3 # m2/day diffusion rate
r <- 0.01 # /day net growth rate
delx <- 1 # m thickness of boxes
numboxes <- 60

## distance of boxes on plant, m, 1 m intervals
Distance <- seq(from = 0.5, by = delx, length.out = numboxes)

## Initial conditions, ind/m2
## aphids present only on two central boxes
APHIDS <- rep(0, times = numboxes)
APHIDS[30:31] <- 1
state <- c(APHIDS = APHIDS) # initialise state variables

## RUNNING the model:
times <- seq(0, 200, by = 1) # output wanted at these time intervals

```

```

out <- ode.1D(state, times, Aphid, parms = 0, nspec = 1, names = "Aphid")

image(out, grid = Distance, main = "Aphid model", ylab = "distance, m",
      legend = TRUE)

## restricting time
image(out, grid = Distance, main = "Aphid model", ylab = "distance, m",
      legend = TRUE, subset = time < 100)

image(out, grid = Distance, main = "Aphid model", ylab = "distance, m",
      method = "persp", border = NA, theta = 30)

FluxAphid <- subset(out, select = "Flux", subset = time < 50)

matplot.1D(out, type = "l", lwd = 2, xyswap = TRUE, lty = 1)

matplot.1D(out, type = "l", lwd = 2, xyswap = TRUE, lty = 1,
           subset = time < 50)

matplot.1D(out, type = "l", lwd = 2, xyswap = TRUE, lty = 1,
           subset = time %in% seq(0, 200, by = 10), col = "grey")

## Not run:
plot(out, ask = FALSE, mfrow = c(1, 1))
plot.1D(out, ask = FALSE, type = "l", lwd = 2, xyswap = TRUE)

## End(Not run)

## see help file for ode.2D for images of 2D variables

```

---

radau

*Implicit Runge-Kutta RADAU IIA*


---

### Description

Solves the initial value problem for stiff or nonstiff systems of ordinary differential equations (ODE) in the form:

$$dy/dt = f(t, y)$$

or linearly implicit differential algebraic equations in the form:

$$Mdy/dt = f(t, y)$$

.

The R function `radau` provides an interface to the Fortran solver RADAU5, written by Ernst Hairer and G. Wanner, which implements the 3-stage RADAU IIA method. It implements the implicit Runge-Kutta method of order 5 with step size control and continuous output. The system of ODEs or DAEs is written as an R function or can be defined in compiled code that has been dynamically loaded.

**Usage**

```

radau(y, times, func, parms, nind = c(length(y), 0, 0),
      rtol = 1e-6, atol = 1e-6, jacfunc = NULL, jactype = "fullint",
      mass = NULL, massup = NULL, massdown = NULL, rootfunc = NULL,
      verbose = FALSE, nroot = 0, hmax = NULL, hini = 0, ynames = TRUE,
      bandup = NULL, banddown = NULL, maxsteps = 5000,
      dllname = NULL, initfunc = dllname, initpar = parms,
      rpar = NULL, ipar = NULL, nout = 0, outnames = NULL,
      forcings = NULL, initforc = NULL, fcontrol = NULL,
      events=NULL, lags = NULL, ...)

```

**Arguments**

- y** the initial (state) values for the ODE system. If **y** has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.
- times** time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of **times** must be the initial time; if only one step is to be taken; set **times** = **NULL**.
- func** either an **R**-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the *model definition*) at time **t**, or the right-hand side of the equation

$$M dy/dt = f(t, y)$$

if a DAE. (if **mass** is supplied then the problem is assumed a DAE).

**func** can also be a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library.

If **func** is an **R**-function, it must be defined as:

```
func <- function(t, y, parms, ...).
```

**t** is the current time point in the integration, **y** is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values **y** has a **names** attribute, the names will be available inside **func**. **parms** is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.

The return value of **func** should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of **y** with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in **times**. The derivatives must be specified in the **same order** as the state variables **y**.

If **func** is a string, then **dllname** must give the name of the shared library (without extension) which must be loaded before **radau()** is called. See **deSolve** package vignette "compiledCode" for more details.

- parms** vector or list of parameters used in **func** or **jacfunc**.
- nind** if a DAE system: a three-valued vector with the number of variables of index 1, 2, 3 respectively. The equations must be defined such that the index 1 variables precede the index 2 variables which in turn precede the index 3 variables. The sum of the variables of different index should equal **N**, the total number of variables. This has implications on the scaling of the variables, i.e. index 2 variables are scaled by  $1/h$ , index 3 variables are scaled by  $1/h^2$ .
- rtol** relative error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as **y**. See details.



atol	absolute error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as $y$ . See details.
jacfunc	if not NULL, an R function that computes the Jacobian of the system of differential equations $\partial y_i / \partial y_j$ , or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the Jacobian (see vignette "compiledCode" from package deSolve, for more about this option). In some circumstances, supplying jacfunc can speed up the computations, if the system is stiff. The R calling sequence for jacfunc is identical to that of func. If the Jacobian is a full matrix, jacfunc should return a matrix $\partial y_i / \partial y_j$ , where the $i$ th row contains the derivative of $dy_i / dt$ with respect to $y_j$ , or a vector containing the matrix elements by columns (the way R and FORTRAN store matrices). If the Jacobian is banded, jacfunc should return a matrix containing only the nonzero bands of the Jacobian, rotated row-wise. See example.
jactype	the structure of the Jacobian, one of "fullint", "fullusr", "bandusr" or "bandint" - either full or banded and estimated internally or by user.
mass	the mass matrix. If not NULL, the problem is a linearly implicit DAE and defined as $M dy/dt = f(t, y)$ . If the mass-matrix $M$ is full, it should be of dimension $n^2$ where $n$ is the number of $y$ -values; if banded the number of rows should be less than $n$ , and the mass-matrix is stored diagonal-wise with element $(i, j)$ stored in $mass(i - j + mumas + 1, j)$ . If $mass = NULL$ then the model is an ODE (default)
massup	number of non-zero bands above the diagonal of the mass matrix, in case it is banded.
massdown	number of non-zero bands below the diagonal of the mass matrix, in case it is banded.
rootfunc	if not NULL, an R function that computes the function whose root has to be estimated or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the root function. The R calling sequence for rootfunc is identical to that of func. rootfunc should return a vector with the function values whose root is sought.
verbose	if TRUE: full output to the screen, e.g. will print the diagnostics of the integration - see details.
nroot	only used if 'dllname' is specified: the number of constraint functions whose roots are desired during the integration; if rootfunc is an R-function, the solver estimates the number of roots.
hmax	an optional maximum value of the integration stepsize. If not specified, hmax is set to the largest difference in times, to avoid that the simulation possibly ignores short-term events. If 0, no maximal size is specified.
hini	initial step size to be attempted; if 0, the initial step size is set equal to $1e-6$ . Usually $1e-3$ to $1e-5$ is good for stiff equations
ynames	logical, if FALSE names of state variables are not passed to function func; this may speed up the simulation especially for multi-D models.
bandup	number of non-zero bands above the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded.
banddown	number of non-zero bands below the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded.

maxsteps	average maximal number of steps per output interval taken by the solver. This argument is defined such as to ensure compatibility with the Livermore-solvers. RADAU only accepts the maximal number of steps for the entire integration, and this is calculated as $\text{length}(\text{times}) * \text{maxsteps}$ .
dllname	a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains all the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> . See vignette "compiledCode" from package <code>deSolve</code> .
initfunc	if not NULL, the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in 'dllname'. See vignette "compiledCode" from package <code>deSolve</code> .
initpar	only when 'dllname' is specified and an initialisation function <code>initfunc</code> is in the dll: the parameters passed to the initialiser, to initialise the common blocks (FORTRAN) or global variables (C, C++).
rpar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with double precision values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> .
ipar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with integer values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> .
nout	only used if <code>dllname</code> is specified and the model is defined in compiled code: the number of output variables calculated in the compiled function <code>func</code> , present in the shared library. Note: it is not automatically checked whether this is indeed the number of output variables calculated in the DLL - you have to perform this check in the code - See vignette "compiledCode" from package <code>deSolve</code> .
outnames	only used if 'dllname' is specified and <code>nout</code> > 0: the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function <code>func</code> , present in the shared library. These names will be used to label the output matrix.
forcings	only used if 'dllname' is specified: a list with the forcing function data sets, each present as a two-columned matrix, with (time, value); interpolation outside the interval $[\text{min}(\text{times}), \text{max}(\text{times})]$ is done by taking the value at the closest data extreme. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
initforc	if not NULL, the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in 'dllname'. It MUST be present if <code>forcings</code> has been given a value. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
fcontrol	A list of control parameters for the forcing functions. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or vignette <code>compiledCode</code> .
events	A matrix or data frame that specifies events, i.e. when the value of a state variable is suddenly changed. See <a href="#">events</a> for more information.
lags	A list that specifies <code>timelags</code> , i.e. the number of steps that has to be kept. To be used for delay differential equations. See <a href="#">timelags</a> , <a href="#">dede</a> for more information.
...	additional arguments passed to <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> allowing this to be a generic function.

## Details

The work is done by the FORTRAN subroutine RADAU5, whose documentation should be consulted for details. The implementation is based on the Fortran 77 version from January 18, 2002.

There are four standard choices for the Jacobian which can be specified with `jactype`.

The options for `jactype` are

`jactype = "fullint"` a full Jacobian, calculated internally by the solver.

`jactype = "fullusr"` a full Jacobian, specified by user function `jacfunc`.

`jactype = "bandusr"` a banded Jacobian, specified by user function `jacfunc`; the size of the bands specified by `bandup` and `banddown`.

`jactype = "bandint"` a banded Jacobian, calculated by `radau`; the size of the bands specified by `bandup` and `banddown`.

Inspection of the example below shows how to specify both a banded and full Jacobian.

The input parameters `rtol`, and `atol` determine the **error control** performed by the solver, which roughly keeps the local error of  $y(i)$  below  $rtol(i) * abs(y(i)) + atol(i)$ .

The diagnostics of the integration can be printed to screen by calling `diagnostics`. If `verbose = TRUE`, the diagnostics will be written to the screen at the end of the integration.

See vignette("deSolve") from the `deSolve` package for an explanation of each element in the vectors containing the diagnostic properties and how to directly access them.

**Models** may be defined in compiled C or FORTRAN code, as well as in an R-function. See package vignette "compiledCode" from package `deSolve` for details.

Information about linking forcing functions to compiled code is in `forcings` (from package `deSolve`).

`radau` can find the root of at least one of a set of constraint functions `rootfunc` of the independent and dependent variables. It then returns the solution at the root if that occurs sooner than the specified stop condition, and otherwise returns the solution according the specified stop condition.

Caution: Because of numerical errors in the function `rootfun` due to roundoff and integration error, `radau` may return false roots, or return the same root at two or more nearly equal values of time.

## Value

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the next elements of the return from `func`, plus an additional column for the time value. There will be a row for each element in `times` unless the FORTRAN routine returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

## Author(s)

Karline Soetaert

## References

E. Hairer and G. Wanner, 1996. Solving Ordinary Differential Equations II. Stiff and Differential-algebraic problems. Springer series in computational mathematics 14, Springer-Verlag, second edition.

**See Also**

- [ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers ,
- [ode.1D](#) for integrating 1-D models,
- [ode.2D](#) for integrating 2-D models,
- [ode.3D](#) for integrating 3-D models,
- [daspk](#) for integrating DAE models up to index 1

[diagnostics](#) to print diagnostic messages.

**Examples**

```
## =====
## Example 1: ODE
## Various ways to solve the same model.
## =====

## the model, 5 state variables
f1 <- function (t, y, parms) {
  ydot <- vector(len = 5)

  ydot[1] <- 0.1*y[1] -0.2*y[2]
  ydot[2] <- -0.3*y[1] +0.1*y[2] -0.2*y[3]
  ydot[3] <-          -0.3*y[2] +0.1*y[3] -0.2*y[4]
  ydot[4] <-          -0.3*y[3] +0.1*y[4] -0.2*y[5]
  ydot[5] <-          -0.3*y[4] +0.1*y[5]

  return(list(ydot))
}

## the Jacobian, written as a full matrix
fulljac <- function (t, y, parms) {
  jac <- matrix(nrow = 5, ncol = 5, byrow = TRUE,
               data = c(0.1, -0.2, 0, 0, 0,
                       -0.3, 0.1, -0.2, 0, 0,
                       0, -0.3, 0.1, -0.2, 0,
                       0, 0, -0.3, 0.1, -0.2,
                       0, 0, 0, -0.3, 0.1))

  return(jac)
}

## the Jacobian, written in banded form
bandjac <- function (t, y, parms) {
  jac <- matrix(nrow = 5, ncol = 5, byrow = TRUE,
               data = c(0, -0.2, -0.2, -0.2, -0.2,
                       0.1, 0.1, 0.1, 0.1, 0.1,
                       -0.3, -0.3, -0.3, -0.3, 0))

  return(jac)
}

## initial conditions and output times
yini <- 1:5
```

```

times <- 1:20

## default: stiff method, internally generated, full Jacobian
out <- radau(yini, times, f1, parms = 0)
plot(out)

## stiff method, user-generated full Jacobian
out2 <- radau(yini, times, f1, parms = 0, jactype = "fullusr",
             jacfunc = fulljac)

## stiff method, internally-generated banded Jacobian
## one nonzero band above (up) and below(down) the diagonal
out3 <- radau(yini, times, f1, parms = 0, jactype = "bandint",
             bandup = 1, banddown = 1)

## stiff method, user-generated banded Jacobian
out4 <- radau(yini, times, f1, parms = 0, jactype = "bandusr",
             jacfunc = bandjac, bandup = 1, banddown = 1)

## =====
## Example 2: ODE
## stiff problem from chemical kinetics
## =====
Chemistry <- function (t, y, p) {
  dy1 <- -.04*y[1] + 1.e4*y[2]*y[3]
  dy2 <- .04*y[1] - 1.e4*y[2]*y[3] - 3.e7*y[2]^2
  dy3 <- 3.e7*y[2]^2
  list(c(dy1, dy2, dy3))
}

times <- 10^(seq(0, 10, by = 0.1))
yini <- c(y1 = 1.0, y2 = 0, y3 = 0)

out <- radau(func = Chemistry, times = times, y = yini, parms = NULL)
plot(out, log = "x", type = "l", lwd = 2)

## =====
## Example 3: DAE
## Car axis problem, index 3 DAE, 8 differential, 2 algebraic equations
## from
## F. Mazzia and C. Magherini. Test Set for Initial Value Problem Solvers,
## release 2.4. Department
## of Mathematics, University of Bari and INdAM, Research Unit of Bari,
## February 2008.
## Available from https://archimede.uniba.it/~testset/
## =====

## Problem is written as  $M*y' = f(t,y,p)$ .
## caraxisfun implements the right-hand side:

caraxisfun <- function(t, y, parms) {
  with(as.list(y), {

```

```

yb <- r * sin(w * t)
xb <- sqrt(L * L - yb * yb)
L1 <- sqrt(x1^2 + y1^2)
Lr <- sqrt((xr - xb)^2 + (yr - yb)^2)

dx1 <- u1; dyl <- v1; dxr <- ur; dyr <- vr

dul <- (L0-L1) * x1/L1 + 2 * lam2 * (x1-xr) + lam1*xb
dvl <- (L0-L1) * y1/L1 + 2 * lam2 * (y1-yr) + lam1*yb - k * g

dur <- (L0-Lr) * (xr-xb)/Lr - 2 * lam2 * (x1-xr)
dvr <- (L0-Lr) * (yr-yb)/Lr - 2 * lam2 * (y1-yr) - k * g

c1 <- xb * x1 + yb * y1
c2 <- (x1 - xr)^2 + (y1 - yr)^2 - L * L

list(c(dx1, dyl, dxr, dyr, dul, dvl, dur, dvr, c1, c2))
})
}

eps <- 0.01; M <- 10; k <- M * eps^2/2;
L <- 1; L0 <- 0.5; r <- 0.1; w <- 10; g <- 1

yini <- c(x1 = 0, y1 = L0, xr = L, yr = L0,
          u1 = -L0/L, v1 = 0,
          ur = -L0/L, vr = 0,
          lam1 = 0, lam2 = 0)

# the mass matrix
Mass <- diag(nrow = 10, 1)
Mass[5,5] <- Mass[6,6] <- Mass[7,7] <- Mass[8,8] <- M * eps * eps/2
Mass[9,9] <- Mass[10,10] <- 0
Mass

# index of the variables: 4 of index 1, 4 of index 2, 2 of index 3
index <- c(4, 4, 2)

times <- seq(0, 3, by = 0.01)
out <- radau(y = yini, mass = Mass, times = times, func = caraxisfun,
            parms = NULL, nind = index)

plot(out, which = 1:4, type = "l", lwd = 2)

```

rk

*Explicit One-Step Solvers for Ordinary Differential Equations (ODE)***Description**

Solving initial value problems for non-stiff systems of first-order ordinary differential equations (ODEs).

The R function `rk` is a top-level function that provides interfaces to a collection of common explicit one-step solvers of the Runge-Kutta family with fixed or variable time steps.

The system of ODE's is written as an R function (which may, of course, use `.C`, `.Fortran`, `.Call`, etc., to call foreign code) or be defined in compiled code that has been dynamically loaded. A vector of parameters is passed to the ODEs, so the solver may be used as part of a modeling package for ODEs, or for parameter estimation using any appropriate modeling tool for non-linear models in R such as `optim`, `nls`, `nlm` or `nlme`

### Usage

```
rk(y, times, func, parms, rtol = 1e-6, atol = 1e-6,
  verbose = FALSE, tcrit = NULL, hmin = 0, hmax = NULL,
  hini = hmax, ynames = TRUE, method = rkMethod("rk45dp7", ... ),
  maxsteps = 5000, dllname = NULL, initfunc = dllname,
  initpar = parms, rpar = NULL, ipar = NULL,
  nout = 0, outnames = NULL, forcings = NULL,
  initforc = NULL, fcontrol = NULL, events = NULL, ...)
```

### Arguments

<code>y</code>	the initial (state) values for the ODE system. If <code>y</code> has a <code>name</code> attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.
<code>times</code>	times at which explicit estimates for <code>y</code> are desired. The first value in <code>times</code> must be the initial time.
<code>func</code>	<p>either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the <i>model definition</i>) at time <code>t</code>, or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library.</p> <p>If <code>func</code> is an R-function, it must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code>. <code>t</code> is the current time point in the integration, <code>y</code> is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values <code>y</code> has a <code>names</code> attribute, the names will be available inside <code>func</code>. <code>parms</code> is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.</p> <p>The return value of <code>func</code> should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of <code>y</code> with respect to <code>time</code>, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in <code>times</code>. The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables <code>y</code>.</p> <p>If <code>func</code> is a string, then <code>dllname</code> must give the name of the shared library (without extension) which must be loaded before <code>rk</code> is called. See package vignette "compiledCode" for more details.</p>
<code>parms</code>	vector or list of parameters used in <code>func</code> .
<code>rtol</code>	relative error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as <code>y</code> . Only applicable to methods with variable time step, see details.
<code>atol</code>	absolute error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as <code>y</code> . Only applicable to methods with variable time step, see details.
<code>tcrit</code>	if not <code>NULL</code> , then <code>rk</code> cannot integrate past <code>tcrit</code> . This parameter is for compatibility with other solvers.

verbose	a logical value that, when TRUE, triggers more verbose output from the ODE solver.
hmin	an optional minimum value of the integration stepsize. In special situations this parameter may speed up computations with the cost of precision. Don't use hmin if you don't know why!
hmax	an optional maximum value of the integration stepsize. If not specified, hmax is set to the maximum of hini and the largest difference in times, to avoid that the simulation possibly ignores short-term events. If 0, no maximal size is specified. Note that hmin and hmax are ignored by fixed step methods like "rk4" or "euler".
hini	initial step size to be attempted; if 0, the initial step size is determined automatically by solvers with flexible time step. For fixed step methods, setting hini = 0 forces internal time steps identically to external time steps provided by times. Similarly, internal time steps of non-interpolating solvers cannot be bigger than external time steps specified in times.
ynames	if FALSE: names of state variables are not passed to function func ; this may speed up the simulation especially for large models.
method	the integrator to use. This can either be a string constant naming one of the pre-defined methods or a call to function <code>rkMethod</code> specifying a user-defined method. The most common methods are the fixed-step methods "euler", second and fourth-order Runge Kutta ("rk2", "rk4"), or the variable step methods Bogacki-Shampine "rk23bs", Runge-Kutta-Fehlberg "rk34f", the fifth-order Cash-Karp method "rk45ck" or the fifth-order Dormand-Prince method with seven stages "rk45dp7". As a suggestion, one may use "rk23bs" (alias "ode23") for simple problems and "rk45dp7" (alias "ode45") for rough problems.
maxsteps	average maximal number of steps per output interval taken by the solver. This argument is defined such as to ensure compatibility with the Livermore-solvers. rk only accepts the maximal number of steps for the entire integration. It is calculated as $\max(\text{length}(\text{times}) * \text{maxsteps}, \max(\text{diff}(\text{times})/\text{hini} + 1)$ .
dllname	a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains all the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in func and jacfunc. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initfunc	if not NULL, the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in 'dllname'. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initpar	only when 'dllname' is specified and an initialisation function initfunc is in the dll: the parameters passed to the initialiser, to initialise the common blocks (FORTRAN) or global variables (C, C++).
rpar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with double precision values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by func and jacfunc.
ipar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with integer values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by func and jacfunc.
nout	only used if dllname is specified and the model is defined in compiled code: the number of output variables calculated in the compiled function func, present in the shared library. Note: it is not automatically checked whether this is indeed



	the number of output variables calculated in the dll - you have to perform this check in the code. See package vignette "compiledCode".
outnames	only used if 'dllname' is specified and nout > 0: the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function func, present in the shared library.
forcings	only used if 'dllname' is specified: a list with the forcing function data sets, each present as a two-columned matrix, with (time,value); interpolation outside the interval [min(times), max(times)] is done by taking the value at the closest data extreme. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
initforc	if not NULL, the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in 'dllname'. It MUST be present if forcings has been given a value. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
fcontrol	A list of control parameters for the forcing functions. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or vignette compiledCode.
events	A matrix or data frame that specifies events, i.e. when the value of a state variable is suddenly changed. See <a href="#">events</a> for more information. Not also that if events are specified, then polynomial interpolation is switched off and integration takes place from one external time step to the next, with an internal step size less than or equal the difference of two adjacent points of times.
...	additional arguments passed to func allowing this to be a generic function.

## Details

Function `rk` is a generalized implementation that can be used to evaluate different solvers of the Runge-Kutta family of explicit ODE solvers. A pre-defined set of common method parameters is in function `rkMethod` which also allows to supply user-defined Butcher tables.

The input parameters `rtol`, and `atol` determine the error control performed by the solver. The solver will control the vector of estimated local errors in  $\mathbf{y}$ , according to an inequality of the form  $\max\text{-norm of } (\mathbf{e}/\mathbf{ewt}) \leq 1$ , where  $\mathbf{ewt}$  is a vector of positive error weights. The values of `rtol` and `atol` should all be non-negative. The form of  $\mathbf{ewt}$  is:

$$\mathbf{rtol} \times \text{abs}(\mathbf{y}) + \mathbf{atol}$$

where multiplication of two vectors is element-by-element.

**Models** can be defined in  $\mathbb{R}$  as a user-supplied **R-function**, that must be called as: `yprime = func(t, y, parms)`. `t` is the current time point in the integration, `y` is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system.

The return value of `func` should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of `y` with respect to time, and whose second element contains output variables that are required at each point in time. Examples are given below.

## Value

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the next elements of the return from `func`, plus and additional column for the time value. There will be a row for each element in `times`

unless the integration routine returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

### Note

Arguments `rpar` and `ipar` are provided for compatibility with `lsoda`.

Starting with version 1.8 implicit Runge-Kutta methods are also supported by this general `rk` interface, however their implementation is still experimental. Instead of this you may consider [radau](#) for a specific full implementation of an implicit Runge-Kutta method.

### Author(s)

Thomas Petzoldt <thomas.petzoldt@tu-dresden.de>

### References

Butcher, J. C. (1987) *The numerical analysis of ordinary differential equations, Runge-Kutta and general linear methods*, Wiley, Chichester and New York.

Engeln-Muellges, G. and Reutter, F. (1996) *Numerik Algorithmen: Entscheidungshilfe zur Auswahl und Nutzung*. VDI Verlag, Duesseldorf.

Hindmarsh, Alan C. (1983) *ODEPACK, A Systematized Collection of ODE Solvers*; in p.55–64 of Stepleman, R.W. et al.[ed.] (1983) *Scientific Computing*, North-Holland, Amsterdam.

Press, W. H., Teukolsky, S. A., Vetterling, W. T. and Flannery, B. P. (2007) *Numerical Recipes in C*. Cambridge University Press.

### See Also

For most practical cases, solvers of the Livermore family (i.e. the ODEPACK solvers, see below) are superior. Some of them are also suitable for stiff ODEs, differential algebraic equations (DAEs), or partial differential equations (PDEs).

- [rkMethod](#) for a list of available Runge-Kutta parameter sets,
- [rk4](#) and [euler](#) for special versions without interpolation (and less overhead),
- [lsoda](#), [lsode](#), [lsodes](#), [lsodar](#), [vode](#), [daspk](#) for solvers of the Livermore family,
- [ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,
- [ode.band](#) for solving models with a banded Jacobian,
- [ode.1D](#) for integrating 1-D models,
- [ode.2D](#) for integrating 2-D models,
- [ode.3D](#) for integrating 3-D models,
- [diagnostics](#) to print diagnostic messages.

## Examples

```

## =====
## Example: Resource-producer-consumer Lotka-Volterra model
## =====

## Notes:
## - Parameters are a list, names accessible via "with" function
## - Function sigimp passed as an argument (input) to model
## (see also ode and lsoda examples)

SPCmod <- function(t, x, parms, input) {
  with(as.list(c(parms, x)), {
    import <- input(t)
    dS <- import - b*S*P + g*C      # substrate
    dP <- c*S*P - d*C*P             # producer
    dC <- e*P*C - f*C               # consumer
    res <- c(dS, dP, dC)
    list(res)
  })
}

## The parameters
parms <- c(b = 0.001, c = 0.1, d = 0.1, e = 0.1, f = 0.1, g = 0.0)

## vector of timesteps
times <- seq(0, 200, length = 101)

## external signal with rectangle impulse
signal <- data.frame(times = times,
                     import = rep(0, length(times)))

signal$import[signal$times >= 10 & signal$times <= 11] <- 0.2

sigimp <- approxfun(signal$times, signal$import, rule = 2)

## Start values for steady state
xstart <- c(S = 1, P = 1, C = 1)

## Euler method
out1 <- rk(xstart, times, SPCmod, parms, hini = 0.1,
           input = sigimp, method = "euler")

## classical Runge-Kutta 4th order
out2 <- rk(xstart, times, SPCmod, parms, hini = 1,
           input = sigimp, method = "rk4")

## Dormand-Prince method of order 5(4)
out3 <- rk(xstart, times, SPCmod, parms, hmax = 1,
           input = sigimp, method = "rk45dp7")

mf <- par("mfrow")
## deSolve plot method for comparing scenarios

```

```

plot(out1, out2, out3, which = c("S", "P", "C"),
     main = c("Substrate", "Producer", "Consumer"),
     col = c("black", "red", "green"),
     lty = c("solid", "dotted", "dotted"), lwd = c(1, 2, 1))

## user-specified plot function
plot(out1[,"P"], out1[,"C"], type = "l", xlab = "Producer", ylab = "Consumer")
lines(out2[,"P"], out2[,"C"], col = "red", lty = "dotted", lwd = 2)
lines(out3[,"P"], out3[,"C"], col = "green", lty = "dotted")

legend("center", legend = c("euler", "rk4", "rk45dp7"),
      lty = c(1, 3, 3), lwd = c(1, 2, 1),
      col = c("black", "red", "green"))
par(mfrow = mf)

```

rk4

*Solve System of ODE (Ordinary Differential Equation)s by Euler's Method or Classical Runge-Kutta 4th Order Integration.*

## Description

Solving initial value problems for systems of first-order ordinary differential equations (ODEs) using Euler's method or the classical Runge-Kutta 4th order integration.

## Usage

```

euler(y, times, func, parms, verbose = FALSE, ynames = TRUE,
      dllname = NULL, initfunc = dllname, initpar = parms,
      rpar = NULL, ipar = NULL, nout = 0, outnames = NULL,
      forcings = NULL, initforc = NULL, fcontrol = NULL, ...)

```

```

rk4(y, times, func, parms, verbose = FALSE, ynames = TRUE,
    dllname = NULL, initfunc = dllname, initpar = parms,
    rpar = NULL, ipar = NULL, nout = 0, outnames = NULL,
    forcings = NULL, initforc = NULL, fcontrol = NULL, ...)

```

```

euler.1D(y, times, func, parms, nspec = NULL, dimens = NULL,
         names = NULL, verbose = FALSE, ynames = TRUE,
         dllname = NULL, initfunc = dllname, initpar = parms,
         rpar = NULL, ipar = NULL, nout = 0, outnames = NULL,
         forcings = NULL, initforc = NULL, fcontrol = NULL, ...)

```

## Arguments

**y** the initial (state) values for the ODE system. If y has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.

**times** times at which explicit estimates for y are desired. The first value in times must be the initial time.

func	<p>either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the <i>model definition</i>) at time <code>t</code>, or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library.</p> <p>If <code>func</code> is an R-function, it must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code>. <code>t</code> is the current time point in the integration, <code>y</code> is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values <code>y</code> has a <code>names</code> attribute, the names will be available inside <code>func</code>. <code>parms</code> is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.</p> <p>The return value of <code>func</code> should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of <code>y</code> with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in times. The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables <code>y</code>.</p> <p>If <code>func</code> is a string, then <code>dllname</code> must give the name of the shared library (without extension) which must be loaded before <code>rk4</code> is called. See package vignette "compiledCode" for more details.</p>
parms	vector or list of parameters used in <code>func</code> .
nspec	for 1D models only: the number of <b>species</b> (components) in the model. If <code>NULL</code> , then <code>dimens</code> should be specified.
dimens	for 1D models only: the number of <b>boxes</b> in the model. If <code>NULL</code> , then <code>nspec</code> should be specified.
names	for 1D models only: the names of the components; used for plotting.
verbose	a logical value that, when <code>TRUE</code> , triggers more verbose output from the ODE solver.
yname	if <code>FALSE</code> : names of state variables are not passed to function <code>func</code> ; this may speed up the simulation especially for large models.
dllname	a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains all the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in <code>func</code> . See package vignette "compiledCode".
initfunc	if not <code>NULL</code> , the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in 'dllname'. See package vignette "compiledCode",
initpar	only when 'dllname' is specified and an initialisation function <code>initfunc</code> is in the DLL: the parameters passed to the initialiser, to initialise the common blocks (FORTRAN) or global variables (C, C++).
rpar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with double precision values passed to the DLL-functions whose names are specified by <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> .
ipar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with integer values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> .
nout	only used if <code>dllname</code> is specified and the model is defined in compiled code: the number of output variables calculated in the compiled function <code>func</code> , present in the shared library. Note: it is not automatically checked whether this is indeed the number of output variables calculated in the DLL - you have to perform this check in the code. See package vignette "compiledCode".
outnames	only used if 'dllname' is specified and <code>nout</code> > 0: the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function <code>func</code> , present in the shared library.

<code>forcings</code>	only used if <code>'dllname'</code> is specified: a list with the forcing function data sets, each present as a two-columned matrix, with (time, value); interpolation outside the interval $[\min(\text{times}), \max(\text{times})]$ is done by taking the value at the closest data extreme. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
<code>initforc</code>	if not NULL, the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in <code>'dllname'</code> . It MUST be present if <code>forcings</code> has been given a value. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
<code>fcontrol</code>	A list of control parameters for the forcing functions. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or vignette <code>compiledCode</code> .
<code>...</code>	additional arguments passed to <code>func</code> allowing this to be a generic function.

### Details

`rk4` and `euler` are special versions of the two fixed step solvers with less overhead and less functionality (e.g. no interpolation and no events) compared to the generic Runge-Kutta codes called by [ode](#) resp. [rk](#).

If you need different internal and external time steps or want to use events, please use: `rk(y, times, func, parms, method = "rk4")` or `rk(y, times, func, parms, method = "euler")`.

See help pages of [rk](#) and [rkMethod](#) for details.

Function `euler.1D` essentially calls function `euler` but contains additional code to support plotting of 1D models, see [ode.1D](#) and [plot.1D](#) for details.

### Value

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the next elements of the return from `func`, plus an additional column for the time value. There will be a row for each element in `times` unless the integration routine returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

### Note

For most practical cases, solvers with flexible timestep (e.g. `rk(method = "ode45")`) and especially solvers of the Livermore family (ODEPACK, e.g. [lsoda](#)) are superior.

### Author(s)

Thomas Petzoldt <[thomas.petzoldt@tu-dresden.de](mailto:thomas.petzoldt@tu-dresden.de)>

### See Also

- [rkMethod](#) for a list of available Runge-Kutta parameter sets,
- [rk](#) for the more general Runge-Code,
- [lsoda](#), [lsode](#), [lsodes](#), [lsodar](#), [vode](#), [daspk](#) for solvers of the Livermore family,
- [ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,

- `ode.band` for solving models with a banded Jacobian,
  - `ode.1D` for integrating 1-D models,
  - `ode.2D` for integrating 2-D models,
  - `ode.3D` for integrating 3-D models,
  - `dede` for integrating models with delay differential equations,
- `diagnostics` to print diagnostic messages.

## Examples

```
## =====
## Example: Analytical and numerical solutions of logistic growth
## =====

## the derivative of the logistic
logist <- function(t, x, parms) {
  with(as.list(parms), {
    dx <- r * x[1] * (1 - x[1]/K)
    list(dx)
  })
}

time <- 0:100
N0 <- 0.1; r <- 0.5; K <- 100
parms <- c(r = r, K = K)
x <- c(N = N0)

## analytical solution
plot(time, K/(1 + (K/N0-1) * exp(-r*time)), ylim = c(0, 120),
     type = "l", col = "red", lwd = 2)

## reasonable numerical solution with rk4
time <- seq(0, 100, 2)
out <- as.data.frame(rk4(x, time, logist, parms))
points(out$time, out$N, pch = 16, col = "blue", cex = 0.5)

## same time step with euler, systematic under-estimation
time <- seq(0, 100, 2)
out <- as.data.frame(euler(x, time, logist, parms))
points(out$time, out$N, pch = 1)

## unstable result
time <- seq(0, 100, 4)
out <- as.data.frame(euler(x, time, logist, parms))
points(out$time, out$N, pch = 8, cex = 0.5)

## method with automatic time step
out <- as.data.frame(lsoda(x, time, logist, parms))
points(out$time, out$N, pch = 1, col = "green")

legend("bottomright",
     c("analytical", "rk4, h=2", "euler, h=2",
```

```
"euler, h=4", "lsoda"),
lty = c(1, NA, NA, NA, NA), lwd = c(2, 1, 1, 1, 1),
pch = c(NA, 16, 1, 8, 1),
col = c("red", "blue", "black", "black", "green"))
```

rkMethod

*Collection of Parameter Sets (Butcher Arrays) for the Runge-Kutta Family of ODE Solvers*

## Description

This function returns a list specifying coefficients and properties of ODE solver methods from the Runge-Kutta family.

## Usage

```
rkMethod(method = NULL, ...)
```

## Arguments

**method** a string constant naming one of the pre-defined methods of the Runge-Kutta family of solvers. The most common methods are the fixed-step methods "euler", "rk2", "rk4" or the variable step methods "rk23bs" (alias "ode23"), "rk45dp7" (alias "ode45") or "rk78f".

**...** specification of a user-defined solver, see *Value* and example below.

## Details

This function supplies method settings for `rk` or `ode`. If called without arguments, the names of all currently implemented solvers of the Runge-Kutta family are returned.

The following comparison gives an idea how the algorithms of **deSolve** are related to similar algorithms of other simulation languages:

<b>rkMethod</b>	<b>Description</b>
"euler"	Euler's Method
"rk2"	2nd order Runge-Kutta, fixed time step (Heun's method)
"rk4"	classical 4th order Runge-Kutta, fixed time step
"rk23"	Runge-Kutta, order 2(3); Octave: ode23
"rk23bs", "ode23"	Bogacki-Shampine, order 2(3); Matlab: ode23
"rk34f"	Runge-Kutta-Fehlberg, order 3(4)
"rk45ck"	Runge-Kutta Cash-Karp, order 4(5)
"rk45f"	Runge-Kutta-Fehlberg, order 4(5); Octave: ode45, pair=1
"rk45e"	Runge-Kutta-England, order 4(5)
"rk45dp6"	Dormand-Prince, order 4(5), local order 6
"rk45dp7", "ode45"	Dormand-Prince 4(5), local order 7
	(also known as dopri5; MATLAB: ode45; Octave: ode45, pair=0)
"rk78f"	Runge-Kutta-Fehlberg, order 7(8)



"rk78dp" | Dormand-Prince, order 7(8)

Note that this table is based on the Runge-Kutta coefficients only, but the algorithms differ also in their implementation, in their stepsize adaption strategy and interpolation methods.

The table reflects the state at time of writing and it is of course possible that implementations change.

Methods "rk45dp7" (alias "ode45") and "rk45ck" contain specific and efficient built-in interpolation schemes (dense output).

As an alternative, Neville-Aitken polynomials can be used to interpolate between time steps. This is available for all RK methods and may be useful to speed up computation if no dense-output formula is available. Note however, that this can introduce considerable local error; it is disabled by default (see `nknots` below).

### Value

A list with the following elements:

ID	name of the method (character)
varstep	boolean value specifying if the method allows for variable time step (TRUE) or not (FALSE).
FSAL	(first same as last) optional boolean value specifying if the method allows re-use of the last function evaluation (TRUE) or not (FALSE or NULL).
A	coefficient matrix of the method. As <code>link{rk}</code> supports only explicit methods, this matrix must be lower triangular. A must be a vector for fixed step methods where only the subdiagonal values are different from zero.
b1	coefficients of the lower order Runge-Kutta pair.
b2	coefficients of the higher order Runge-Kutta pair (optional, for embedded methods that allow variable time step).
c	coefficients for calculating the intermediate time steps.
d	optional coefficients for built-in polynomial interpolation of the outputs from internal steps (dense output), currently only available for method <code>rk45dp7</code> (Dormand-Prince).
densetype	optional integer value specifying the dense output formula; currently only <code>densetype = 1</code> for <code>rk45dp7</code> (Dormand-Prince) and <code>densetype = 2</code> for <code>rk45ck</code> (Cash-Karp) are supported. Undefined values (e.g., <code>densetype = NULL</code> ) disable dense output.
stage	number of function evaluations needed (corresponds to number of rows in A).
Qerr	global error order of the method, important for automatic time-step adjustment.
nknots	integer value specifying the order of interpolation polynomials for methods without dense output. If <code>nknots &lt; 2</code> (the default) then internal interpolation is switched off and integration is performed step by step between external time steps.  If <code>nknots</code> is between 3 and 8, Neville-Aitken polynomials are used, which need at least <code>nknots + 1</code> internal time steps. Interpolation may speed up integration but can lead to local errors higher than the tolerance, especially if external and internal time steps are very different.

alpha	optional tuning parameter for stepsize adjustment. If alpha is omitted, it is set to $1/Q_{err} - 0.75\beta$ . The default value is $1/Q_{err}$ (for $\beta = 0$ ).
beta	optional tuning parameter for stepsize adjustment. Typical values are 0 (default) or $0.4/Q_{err}$ .

### Note

- Adaptive stepsize Runge-Kuttas are preferred if the solution contains parts when the states change fast, and parts when not much happens. They will take small steps over bumpy ground and long steps over uninteresting terrain.
- As a suggestion, one may use "rk23" (alias "ode23") for simple problems and "rk45dp7" (alias "ode45") for rough problems. The default solver is "rk45dp7" (alias "ode45"), because of its relatively high order (4), re-use of the last intermediate steps (FSAL = first same as last) and built-in polynomial interpolation (dense output).
- Solver "rk23bs", that supports also FSAL, may be useful for slightly stiff systems if demands on precision are relatively low.
- Another good choice, assuring medium accuracy, is the Cash-Karp Runge-Kutta method, "rk45ck".
- Classical "rk4" is traditionally used in cases where an adequate stepsize is known a-priori or if external forcing data are provided for fixed time steps only and frequent interpolation of external data needs to be avoided.
- Method "rk45dp7" (alias "ode45") contains an efficient built-in interpolation scheme (dense output) based on intermediate function evaluations.

Starting with version 1.8 implicit Runge-Kutta (irk) methods are also supported by the general rk interface, however their implementation is still experimental. Instead of this you may consider [radau](#) for a specific full implementation of an implicit Runge-Kutta method.

### Author(s)

Thomas Petzoldt <thomas.petzoldt@tu-dresden.de>

### References

- Bogacki, P. and Shampine L.F. (1989) A 3(2) pair of Runge-Kutta formulas, Appl. Math. Lett. **2**, 1–9.
- Butcher, J. C. (1987) The numerical analysis of ordinary differential equations, Runge-Kutta and general linear methods, Wiley, Chichester and New York.
- Cash, J. R. and Karp A. H., 1990. A variable order Runge-Kutta method for initial value problems with rapidly varying right-hand sides, ACM Transactions on Mathematical Software **16**, 201–222. doi:10.1145/79505.79507
- Dormand, J. R. and Prince, P. J. (1980) A family of embedded Runge-Kutta formulae, J. Comput. Appl. Math. **6**(1), 19–26.
- Engeln-Muellges, G. and Reutter, F. (1996) Numerik Algorithmen: Entscheidungshilfe zur Auswahl und Nutzung. VDI Verlag, Duesseldorf.
- Fehlberg, E. (1967) Klassische Runge-Kutta-Formeln fuer fuenfter and siebenter Ordnung mit Schrittweiten-Kontrolle, Computing (Arch. Elektron. Rechnen) **4**, 93–106.

Kutta, W. (1901) Beitrag zur naerungsweisen Integration totaler Differentialgleichungen, Z. Math. Phys. **46**, 435–453.

Octave-Forge - Extra Packages for GNU Octave, Package OdePkg. <https://octave.sourceforge.io>

Prince, P. J. and Dormand, J. R. (1981) High order embedded Runge-Kutta formulae, J. Comput. Appl. Math. **7**(1), 67–75. doi:10.1016/0771050X(81)900103

Runge, C. (1895) Ueber die numerische Aufloesung von Differentialgleichungen, Math. Ann. **46**, 167–178.

MATLAB (R) is a registered property of The Mathworks Inc. <https://www.mathworks.com/>

## See Also

[rk](#), [ode](#)

## Examples

```
rkMethod()          # returns the names of all available methods
rkMethod("rk45dp7") # parameters of the Dormand-Prince 5(4) method
rkMethod("ode45")   # an alias for the same method

func <- function(t, x, parms) {
  with(as.list(c(parms, x)),{
    dP <- a * P      - b * C * P
    dC <- b * P * C  - c * C
    res <- c(dP, dC)
    list(res)
  })
}
times <- seq(0, 200, length = 101)
parms <- c(a = 0.1, b = 0.1, c = 0.1)
x <- c(P = 2, C = 1)

## rk using ode45 as the default method
out <- rk(x, times, func, parms)

## all methods can be called also from 'ode' by using rkMethod
out <- ode(x, times, func, parms, method = rkMethod("rk4"))

## 'ode' has aliases for the most common RK methods
out <- ode(x, times, func, parms, method = "ode45")

##=====
## Comparison of local error from different interpolation methods
##=====

## lsoda with lower tolerances (1e-10) used as reference
o0 <- ode(x, times, func, parms, method = "lsoda", atol = 1e-10, rtol = 1e-10)

## rk45dp7 with hmax = 10 > delta_t = 2
o1 <- ode(x, times, func, parms, method = rkMethod("rk45dp7"), hmax = 10)
```

```

## disable dense-output interpolation
## and use only Neville-Aitken polynomials instead
o2 <- ode(x, times, func, parms,
  method = rkMethod("rk45dp7", densetype = NULL, nknots = 5), hmax = 10)

## stop and go: disable interpolation completely
## and integrate explicitly between external time steps
o3 <- ode(x, times, func, parms,
  method = rkMethod("rk45dp7", densetype = NULL, nknots = 0, hmax=10))

## compare different interpolation methods with lsoda
mf <- par("mfrow" = c(4, 1))
matplot(o1[,1], o1[,-1], type = "l", xlab = "Time", main = "State Variables",
  ylab = "P, C")
matplot(o0[,1], o0[,-1] - o1[,-1], type = "l", xlab = "Time", ylab = "Diff.",
  main="Difference between lsoda and ode45 with dense output")
abline(h = 0, col = "grey")
matplot(o0[,1], o0[,-1] - o2[,-1], type = "l", xlab = "Time", ylab = "Diff.",
  main="Difference between lsoda and ode45 with Neville-Aitken")
abline(h = 0, col = "grey")
matplot(o0[,1], o0[,-1] - o3[,-1], type = "l", xlab = "Time", ylab = "Diff.",
  main="Difference between lsoda and ode45 in 'stop and go' mode")
abline(h = 0, col = "grey")
par(mf)

#####
## rkMethod allows to define user-specified Runge-Kutta methods
#####
out <- ode(x, times, func, parms,
  method = rkMethod(ID = "midpoint",
    varstep = FALSE,
    A = c(0, 1/2),
    b1 = c(0, 1),
    c = c(0, 1/2),
    stage = 2,
    Qerr = 1
  )
)
plot(out)

## compare method diagnostics
times <- seq(0, 200, length = 10)
o1 <- ode(x, times, func, parms, method = rkMethod("rk45ck"))
o2 <- ode(x, times, func, parms, method = rkMethod("rk78dp"))
diagnostics(o1)
diagnostics(o2)

```

**Description**

A model that describes oxygen consumption in a marine sediment.

One state variable:

- sedimentary organic carbon,

Organic carbon settles on the sediment surface (forcing function Flux) and decays at a constant rate.

The equation is simple:

$$\frac{dC}{dt} = Flux - kC$$

This model is written in FORTRAN.

**Usage**

SCOC(times, y = NULL, parms, Flux, ...)

**Arguments**

times	time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of times must be the initial time,
y	the initial value of the state variable; if NULL it will be estimated based on Flux and parms,
parms	the model parameter, k,
Flux	a data set with the organic carbon deposition rates,
...	any other parameters passed to the integrator ode (which solves the model).

**Details**

The model is implemented primarily to demonstrate the linking of FORTRAN with R-code.

The source can be found in the 'doc/examples/dynload' subdirectory of the package.

**Author(s)**

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

**References**

Soetaert, K. and P.M.J. Herman, 2009. A Practical Guide to Ecological Modelling. Using R as a Simulation Platform. Springer, 372 pp.

**See Also**

[cc14model](#), the CCl4 inhalation model.

[aquaphy](#), the algal growth model.

**Examples**

```

## Forcing function data
Flux <- matrix(ncol = 2, byrow = TRUE, data = c(
  1, 0.654, 11, 0.167, 21, 0.060, 41, 0.070, 73, 0.277, 83, 0.186,
  93, 0.140, 103, 0.255, 113, 0.231, 123, 0.309, 133, 1.127, 143, 1.923,
  153, 1.091, 163, 1.001, 173, 1.691, 183, 1.404, 194, 1.226, 204, 0.767,
  214, 0.893, 224, 0.737, 234, 0.772, 244, 0.726, 254, 0.624, 264, 0.439,
  274, 0.168, 284, 0.280, 294, 0.202, 304, 0.193, 315, 0.286, 325, 0.599,
  335, 1.889, 345, 0.996, 355, 0.681, 365, 1.135))

parms <- c(k = 0.01)

times <- 1:365
out <- SCOC(times, parms = parms, Flux = Flux)

plot(out[, "time"], out[, "Depo"], type = "l", col = "red")
lines(out[, "time"], out[, "Mineralisation"], col = "blue")

## Constant interpolation of forcing function - left side of interval
fcontrol <- list(method = "constant")

out2 <- SCOC(times, parms = parms, Flux = Flux, fcontrol = fcontrol)

plot(out2[, "time"], out2[, "Depo"], type = "l", col = "red")
lines(out2[, "time"], out2[, "Mineralisation"], col = "blue")

```

---

timelags

*Time Lagged Values of State Variables and Derivatives.*


---

**Description**

Functions `lagvalue` and `lagderiv` provide access to past (lagged) values of state variables and derivatives.

They are to be used with function `dede`, to solve delay differential equations.

**Usage**

```

lagvalue(t, nr)
lagderiv(t, nr)

```

**Arguments**

<code>t</code>	the time for which the lagged value is wanted; this should be no larger than the current simulation time and no smaller than the initial simulation time.
<code>nr</code>	the number of the lagged value; if <code>NULL</code> then all state variables or derivatives are returned.

**Details**

The `lagvalue` and `lagderiv` can only be called during the integration, the lagged time should not be smaller than the initial simulation time, nor should it be larger than the current simulation time.

Cubic Hermite interpolation is used to obtain an accurate interpolant at the requested lagged time.

**Value**

a scalar (or vector) with the lagged value(s).

**Author(s)**

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

**See Also**

[dede](#), for how to implement delay differential equations.

**Examples**

```
## =====
## exercise 6 from Shampine and Thompson, 2000
## solving delay differential equations with dde23
##
## two lag values
## =====

##-----
## the derivative function
##-----
derivs <- function(t, y, parms) {
  History <- function(t) c(cos(t), sin(t))
  if (t < 1)
    lag1 <- History(t - 1)[1]
  else
    lag1 <- lagvalue(t - 1)[1] # returns a vector; select first element

  if (t < 2)
    lag2 <- History(t - 2)[2]
  else
    lag2 <- lagvalue(t - 2, 2) # faster than lagvalue(t - 2)[2]

  dy1 <- lag1 * lag2
  dy2 <- -y[1] * lag2

  list(c(dy1, dy2), lag1 = lag1, lag2 = lag2)
}

##-----
## parameters
##-----
```

```

r <- 3.5; m <- 19

##-----
## initial values and times
##-----

yinit <- c(y1 = 0, y2 = 0)
times <- seq(0, 20, by = 0.01)

##-----
## solve the model
##-----

yout <- dede(y = yinit, times = times, func = derivs,
  parms = NULL, atol = 1e-9)

##-----
## plot results
##-----

plot(yout, type = "l", lwd = 2)

## =====
## The predator-prey model with time lags, from Hale
## problem 1 from Shampine and Thompson, 2000
## solving delay differential equations with dde23
##
## a vector with lag values
## =====

##-----
## the derivative function
##-----
predprey <- function(t, y, parms) {
  tlag <- t - 1
  if (tlag < 0)
    ylag <- c(80, 30)
  else
    ylag <- lagvalue(tlag) # returns a vector

  dy1 <- a * y[1] * (1 - y[1]/m) + b * y[1] * y[2]
  dy2 <- c * y[2] + d * ylag[1] * ylag[2]
  list(c(dy1, dy2))
}

##-----
## parameters
##-----

a <- 0.25; b <- -0.01; c <- -1 ; d <- 0.01; m <- 200

##-----
## initial values and times

```



```

##-----

yinit <- c(y1 = 80, y2 = 30)
times <- seq(0, 100, by = 0.01)

#-----
# solve the model
#-----

yout <- dede(y = yinit, times = times, func = predprey, parms = NULL)

##-----
## display, plot results
##-----

plot(yout, type = "l", lwd = 2, main = "Predator-prey model", mfrow = c(2, 2))
plot(yout[,2], yout[,3], xlab = "y1", ylab = "y2", type = "l", lwd = 2)

diagnostics(yout)

## =====
##
## A neutral delay differential equation (lagged derivative)
##  $y'(t) = -y'(t-1)$ ,  $y(t) \ t < 0 = 1/t$ 
##
## =====

##-----
## the derivative function
##-----
derivs <- function(t, y, parms) {
  tlag <- t - 1
  if (tlag < 0)
    dylag <- -1
  else
    dylag <- lagderiv(tlag)

  list(c(dy = -dylag), dylag = dylag)
}

##-----
## initial values and times
##-----

yinit <- 0
times <- seq(0, 4, 0.001)

##-----
## solve the model
##-----

yout <- dede(y = yinit, times = times, func = derivs, parms = NULL)

```

```
##-----
## display, plot results
##-----

plot(yout, type = "l", lwd = 2)
```

---

vode

*Solver for Ordinary Differential Equations (ODE)*


---

### Description

Solves the initial value problem for stiff or nonstiff systems of ordinary differential equations (ODE) in the form:

$$dy/dt = f(t, y)$$

The R function `vode` provides an interface to the FORTRAN ODE solver of the same name, written by Peter N. Brown, Alan C. Hindmarsh and George D. Byrne.

The system of ODE's is written as an R function or be defined in compiled code that has been dynamically loaded.

In contrast to `lsoda`, the user has to specify whether or not the problem is stiff and choose the appropriate solution method.

`vode` is very similar to `lsode`, but uses a variable-coefficient method rather than the fixed-step-interpolate methods in `lsode`. In addition, in `vode` it is possible to choose whether or not a copy of the Jacobian is saved for reuse in the corrector iteration algorithm; In `lsode`, a copy is not kept.

### Usage

```
vode(y, times, func, parms, rtol = 1e-6, atol = 1e-6,
     jacfunc = NULL, jactype = "fullint", mf = NULL, verbose = FALSE,
     tcrit = NULL, hmin = 0, hmax = NULL, hini = 0, ynames = TRUE,
     maxord = NULL, bandup = NULL, banddown = NULL, maxsteps = 5000,
     dllname = NULL, initfunc = dllname, initpar = parms, rpar = NULL,
     ipar = NULL, nout = 0, outnames = NULL, forcings=NULL,
     initforc = NULL, fcontrol=NULL, events=NULL, lags = NULL,...)
```

### Arguments

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>y</code>     | the initial (state) values for the ODE system. If <code>y</code> has a name attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix.   |
| <code>times</code> | time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of <code>times</code> must be the initial time; if only one step is to be taken; set <code>times = NULL</code> .  |
| <code>func</code>  | either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the <i>model definition</i> ) at time <code>t</code> , or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library. |

If `func` is an R-function, it must be defined as: `func <- function(t, y, parms, ...)`. `t` is the current time point in the integration, `y` is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values `y` has a `names` attribute, the names will be available inside `func`. `parms` is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.

The return value of `func` should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of `y` with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in times. The derivatives must be specified in the **same order** as the state variables `y`.

If `func` is a string, then `dllname` must give the name of the shared library (without extension) which must be loaded before `vode()` is called. See package vignette "compiledCode" for more details.

<code>parms</code>	vector or list of parameters used in <code>func</code> or <code>jacfunc</code> .
<code>rtol</code>	relative error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as <code>y</code> . See details.
<code>atol</code>	absolute error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as <code>y</code> . See details.
<code>jacfunc</code>	if not NULL, an R function that computes the Jacobian of the system of differential equations $\partial y_i / \partial y_j$ , or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the Jacobian (see vignette "compiledCode" for more about this option).  In some circumstances, supplying <code>jacfunc</code> can speed up the computations, if the system is stiff. The R calling sequence for <code>jacfunc</code> is identical to that of <code>func</code> .  If the Jacobian is a full matrix, <code>jacfunc</code> should return a matrix $\partial y_i / \partial y_j$ , where the <i>i</i> th row contains the derivative of $dy_i/dt$ with respect to $y_j$ , or a vector containing the matrix elements by columns (the way R and FORTRAN store matrices). If the Jacobian is banded, <code>jacfunc</code> should return a matrix containing only the nonzero bands of the Jacobian, rotated row-wise. See first example of <code>lsode</code> .
<code>jactype</code>	the structure of the Jacobian, one of "fullint", "fullusr", "bandusr" or "bandint" - either full or banded and estimated internally or by user; overruled if <code>mf</code> is not NULL.
<code>mf</code>	the "method flag" passed to function <code>vode</code> - overrules <code>jactype</code> - provides more options than <code>jactype</code> - see details.
<code>verbose</code>	if TRUE: full output to the screen, e.g. will print the diagnostics of the integration - see details.
<code>tcrit</code>	if not NULL, then <code>vode</code> cannot integrate past <code>tcrit</code> . The FORTRAN routine <code>dvode</code> overshoots its targets (times points in the vector <code>times</code> ), and interpolates values for the desired time points. If there is a time beyond which integration should not proceed (perhaps because of a singularity), that should be provided in <code>tcrit</code> .
<code>hmin</code>	an optional minimum value of the integration stepsize. In special situations this parameter may speed up computations with the cost of precision. Don't use <code>hmin</code> if you don't know why!
<code>hmax</code>	an optional maximum value of the integration stepsize. If not specified, <code>hmax</code> is set to the largest difference in times, to avoid that the simulation possibly ignores short-term events. If 0, no maximal size is specified.

hini	initial step size to be attempted; if 0, the initial step size is determined by the solver.
yname	logical; if FALSE: names of state variables are not passed to function func ; this may speed up the simulation especially for multi-D models.
maxord	the maximum order to be allowed. NULL uses the default, i.e. order 12 if implicit Adams method (meth = 1), order 5 if BDF method (meth = 2). Reduce maxord to save storage space.
bandup	number of non-zero bands above the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded.
banddown	number of non-zero bands below the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded.
maxsteps	maximal number of steps per output interval taken by the solver.
dllname	a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains all the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in func and jacfunc. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initfunc	if not NULL, the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in 'dllname'. See package vignette "compiledCode".
initpar	only when 'dllname' is specified and an initialisation function initfunc is in the dll: the parameters passed to the initialiser, to initialise the common blocks (FORTRAN) or global variables (C, C++).
rpar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with double precision values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by func and jacfunc.
ipar	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with integer values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by func and jacfunc.
nout	only used if dllname is specified and the model is defined in compiled code: the number of output variables calculated in the compiled function func, present in the shared library. Note: it is not automatically checked whether this is indeed the number of output variables calculated in the dll - you have to perform this check in the code - See package vignette "compiledCode".
outnames	only used if 'dllname' is specified and nout > 0: the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function func, present in the shared library. These names will be used to label the output matrix.
forcings	only used if 'dllname' is specified: a list with the forcing function data sets, each present as a two-columned matrix, with (time,value); interpolation outside the interval [min(times), max(times)] is done by taking the value at the closest data extreme. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
initforc	if not NULL, the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in 'dllname'. It MUST be present if forcings has been given a value. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
fcontrol	A list of control parameters for the forcing functions. <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode"
events	A matrix or data frame that specifies events, i.e. when the value of a state variable is suddenly changed. See <a href="#">events</a> for more information.
lags	A list that specifies timelags, i.e. the number of steps that has to be kept. To be used for delay differential equations. See <a href="#">timelags</a> , <a href="#">dede</a> for more information.

... additional arguments passed to func and jacfunc allowing this to be a generic function.

## Details

Before using the integrator `vode`, the user has to decide whether or not the problem is stiff.

If the problem is nonstiff, use method flag `mf = 10`, which selects a nonstiff (Adams) method, no Jacobian used.

If the problem is stiff, there are four standard choices which can be specified with `jactype` or `mf`.

The options for **jactype** are

**jac = "fullint"**: a full Jacobian, calculated internally by `vode`, corresponds to `mf = 22`,

**jac = "fullusr"**: a full Jacobian, specified by user function `jacfunc`, corresponds to `mf = 21`,

**jac = "bandusr"**: a banded Jacobian, specified by user function `jacfunc`; the size of the bands specified by `bandup` and `banddown`, corresponds to `mf = 24`,

**jac = "bandint"**: a banded Jacobian, calculated by `vode`; the size of the bands specified by `bandup` and `banddown`, corresponds to `mf = 25`.

More options are available when specifying **mf** directly.

The legal values of `mf` are 10, 11, 12, 13, 14, 15, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 25, -11, -12, -14, -15, -21, -22, -24, -25.

`mf` is a signed two-digit integer,  $mf = JSV \cdot (10 \cdot METH + MITER)$ , where

**JSV = SIGN(mf)** indicates the Jacobian-saving strategy: `JSV = 1` means a copy of the Jacobian is saved for reuse in the corrector iteration algorithm. `JSV = -1` means a copy of the Jacobian is not saved.

**METH** indicates the basic linear multistep method: `METH = 1` means the implicit Adams method. `METH = 2` means the method based on backward differentiation formulas (BDF-s).

**MITER** indicates the corrector iteration method: `MITER = 0` means functional iteration (no Jacobian matrix is involved).

`MITER = 1` means chord iteration with a user-supplied full (NEQ by NEQ) Jacobian.

`MITER = 2` means chord iteration with an internally generated (difference quotient) full Jacobian (using NEQ extra calls to `func` per `df/dy` value).

`MITER = 3` means chord iteration with an internally generated diagonal Jacobian approximation (using 1 extra call to `func` per `df/dy` evaluation).

`MITER = 4` means chord iteration with a user-supplied banded Jacobian.

`MITER = 5` means chord iteration with an internally generated banded Jacobian (using `ML+MU+1` extra calls to `func` per `df/dy` evaluation).

If `MITER = 1` or `4`, the user must supply a subroutine `jacfunc`.

The example for integrator `lsode` demonstrates how to specify both a banded and full Jacobian.

The input parameters `rtol`, and `atol` determine the **error control** performed by the solver. If the request for precision exceeds the capabilities of the machine, `vode` will return an error code. See `lsoda` for details.

The diagnostics of the integration can be printed to screen by calling `diagnostics`. If `verbose = TRUE`, the diagnostics will be written to the screen at the end of the integration.

See vignette("deSolve") for an explanation of each element in the vectors containing the diagnostic properties and how to directly access them.

**Models** may be defined in compiled C or FORTRAN code, as well as in an R-function. See package vignette "compiledCode" for details.

More information about models defined in compiled code is in the package vignette ("compiled-Code"); information about linking forcing functions to compiled code is in [forcings](#).

Examples in both C and FORTRAN are in the 'dynload' subdirectory of the deSolve package directory.

## Value

A matrix of class deSolve with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the next elements of the return from `func`, plus an additional column for the time value. There will be a row for each element in `times` unless the FORTRAN routine 'vode' returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

## Note

From version 1.10.4, the default of `atol` was changed from  $1e-8$  to  $1e-6$ , to be consistent with the other solvers.

## Author(s)

Karline Soetaert <[karline.soetaert@nioz.nl](mailto:karline.soetaert@nioz.nl)>

## References

P. N. Brown, G. D. Byrne, and A. C. Hindmarsh, 1989. VODE: A Variable Coefficient ODE Solver, *SIAM J. Sci. Stat. Comput.*, 10, pp. 1038-1051.  
Also, LLNL Report UCRL-98412, June 1988. [doi:10.1137/0910062](https://doi.org/10.1137/0910062)

G. D. Byrne and A. C. Hindmarsh, 1975. A Polyalgorithm for the Numerical Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations. *ACM Trans. Math. Software*, 1, pp. 71-96. [doi:10.1145/355626.355636](https://doi.org/10.1145/355626.355636)

A. C. Hindmarsh and G. D. Byrne, 1977. EPISODE: An Effective Package for the Integration of Systems of Ordinary Differential Equations. LLNL Report UCID-30112, Rev. 1.

G. D. Byrne and A. C. Hindmarsh, 1976. EPISODEB: An Experimental Package for the Integration of Systems of Ordinary Differential Equations with Banded Jacobians. LLNL Report UCID-30132, April 1976.

A. C. Hindmarsh, 1983. ODEPACK, a Systematized Collection of ODE Solvers. in *Scientific Computing*, R. S. Stepleman et al., eds., North-Holland, Amsterdam, pp. 55-64.

K. R. Jackson and R. Sacks-Davis, 1980. An Alternative Implementation of Variable Step-Size Multistep Formulas for Stiff ODEs. *ACM Trans. Math. Software*, 6, pp. 295-318. [doi:10.1145/355900.355903](https://doi.org/10.1145/355900.355903)

Netlib: <https://netlib.org>

**See Also**

- [rk](#),
  - [rk4](#) and [euler](#) for Runge-Kutta integrators.
  - [lsoda](#), [lsode](#), [lsodes](#), [lsodar](#), [daspk](#) for other solvers of the Livermore family,
  - [ode](#) for a general interface to most of the ODE solvers,
  - [ode.band](#) for solving models with a banded Jacobian,
  - [ode.1D](#) for integrating 1-D models,
  - [ode.2D](#) for integrating 2-D models,
  - [ode.3D](#) for integrating 3-D models,
- [diagnostics](#) to print diagnostic messages.

**Examples**

```
## =====
## ex. 1
## The famous Lorenz equations: chaos in the earth's atmosphere
## Lorenz 1963. J. Atmos. Sci. 20, 130-141.
## =====

chaos <- function(t, state, parameters) {
  with(as.list(c(state)), {

    dx    <- -8/3 * x + y * z
    dy    <- -10 * (y - z)
    dz    <- -x * y + 28 * y - z

    list(c(dx, dy, dz))
  })
}

state <- c(x = 1, y = 1, z = 1)
times <- seq(0, 100, 0.01)

out <- vode(state, times, chaos, 0)

plot(out, type = "l") # all versus time
plot(out[, "x"], out[, "y"], type = "l", main = "Lorenz butterfly",
      xlab = "x", ylab = "y")

## =====
## ex. 2
## SCOC model, in FORTRAN - to see the FORTRAN code:
## browseURL(paste(system.file(package="deSolve"),
##                  "/doc/examples/dynload/scoc.f", sep=""))
## example from Soetaert and Herman, 2009, chapter 3. (simplified)
## =====

## Forcing function data
```

```

Flux <- matrix(ncol = 2, byrow = TRUE, data = c(
  1, 0.654, 11, 0.167, 21, 0.060, 41, 0.070, 73, 0.277, 83, 0.186,
  93, 0.140, 103, 0.255, 113, 0.231, 123, 0.309, 133, 1.127, 143, 1.923,
  153, 1.091, 163, 1.001, 173, 1.691, 183, 1.404, 194, 1.226, 204, 0.767,
  214, 0.893, 224, 0.737, 234, 0.772, 244, 0.726, 254, 0.624, 264, 0.439,
  274, 0.168, 284, 0.280, 294, 0.202, 304, 0.193, 315, 0.286, 325, 0.599,
  335, 1.889, 345, 0.996, 355, 0.681, 365, 1.135))

parms <- c(k = 0.01)

meanDepo <- mean(approx(Flux[,1], Flux[,2], xout = seq(1, 365, by = 1))$y)

Yini <- c(y = as.double(meanDepo/parms))

times <- 1:365
out <- vode(Yini, times, func = "scocder",
  parms = parms, dllname = "deSolve",
  initforc = "scocforc", forcings = Flux,
  initfunc = "scocpar", nout = 2,
  outnames = c("Mineralisation", "Depo"))

matplot(out[,1], out[,c("Depo", "Mineralisation")],
  type = "l", col = c("red", "blue"), xlab = "time", ylab = "Depo")

## Constant interpolation of forcing function - left side of interval
fcontrol <- list(method = "constant")

out2 <- vode(Yini, times, func = "scocder",
  parms = parms, dllname = "deSolve",
  initforc = "scocforc", forcings = Flux, fcontrol = fcontrol,
  initfunc = "scocpar", nout = 2,
  outnames = c("Mineralisation", "Depo"))
matplot(out2[,1], out2[,c("Depo", "Mineralisation")],
  type = "l", col = c("red", "blue"), xlab = "time", ylab = "Depo")

## Constant interpolation of forcing function - middle of interval
fcontrol <- list(method = "constant", f = 0.5)

out3 <- vode(Yini, times, func = "scocder",
  parms = parms, dllname = "deSolve",
  initforc = "scocforc", forcings = Flux, fcontrol = fcontrol,
  initfunc = "scocpar", nout = 2,
  outnames = c("Mineralisation", "Depo"))

matplot(out3[,1], out3[,c("Depo", "Mineralisation")],
  type = "l", col = c("red", "blue"), xlab = "time", ylab = "Depo")

plot(out, out2, out3)

```



## Description

Solves the initial value problem for stiff or nonstiff systems of ordinary differential equations (ODE) in the form:

$$dy/dt = f(t, y)$$

where  $dy$  and  $y$  are complex variables.

The R function `zvode` provides an interface to the FORTRAN ODE solver of the same name, written by Peter N. Brown, Alan C. Hindmarsh and George D. Byrne.

## Usage

```
zvode(y, times, func, parms, rtol = 1e-6, atol = 1e-6,
      jacfunc = NULL, jactype = "fullint", mf = NULL, verbose = FALSE,
      tcrit = NULL, hmin = 0, hmax = NULL, hini = 0, ynames = TRUE,
      maxord = NULL, bandup = NULL, banddown = NULL, maxsteps = 5000,
      dllname = NULL, initfunc = dllname, initpar = parms, rpar = NULL,
      ipar = NULL, nout = 0, outnames = NULL, forcings = NULL,
      initforc = NULL, fcontrol = NULL, ...)
```

## Arguments

- |                    |   |
|--------------------|---|
| <code>y</code>     | the initial (state) values for the ODE system. If <code>y</code> has a <code>name</code> attribute, the names will be used to label the output matrix. <i>y has to be complex</i>   |
| <code>times</code> | time sequence for which output is wanted; the first value of <code>times</code> must be the initial time; if only one step is to be taken; set <code>times = NULL</code> .  |
| <code>func</code>  | either an R-function that computes the values of the derivatives in the ODE system (the <i>model definition</i> ) at time <code>t</code> , or a character string giving the name of a compiled function in a dynamically loaded shared library.<br>If <code>func</code> is an R-function, it must be defined as: <code>func &lt;- function(t, y, parms, ...)</code> . <code>t</code> is the current time point in the integration, <code>y</code> is the current estimate of the variables in the ODE system. If the initial values <code>y</code> has a <code>names</code> attribute, the names will be available inside <code>func</code> . <code>parms</code> is a vector or list of parameters; ... (optional) are any other arguments passed to the function.<br>The return value of <code>func</code> should be a list, whose first element is a vector containing the derivatives of <code>y</code> with respect to time, and whose next elements are global values that are required at each point in <code>times</code> . The derivatives must be specified in the <b>same order</b> as the state variables <code>y</code> . They should be <i>complex numbers</i> .<br>If <code>func</code> is a string, then <code>dllname</code> must give the name of the shared library (without extension) which must be loaded before <code>zvode()</code> is called. See package vignette "compiledCode" for more details. |
| <code>parms</code> | vector or list of parameters used in <code>func</code> or <code>jacfunc</code> .  |
| <code>rtol</code>  | relative error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as <code>y</code> . See details.  |
| <code>atol</code>  | absolute error tolerance, either a scalar or an array as long as <code>y</code> . See details.  |

jacfunc	<p>if not NULL, an R function that computes the Jacobian of the system of differential equations <math>\partial y_i / \partial y_j</math>, or a string giving the name of a function or subroutine in 'dllname' that computes the Jacobian (see vignette "compiledCode" for more about this option).</p> <p>In some circumstances, supplying jacfunc can speed up the computations, if the system is stiff. The R calling sequence for jacfunc is identical to that of func.</p> <p>If the Jacobian is a full matrix, jacfunc should return a matrix <math>\dot{d}y/dy</math>, where the <i>i</i>th row contains the derivative of <math>dy_i/dt</math> with respect to <math>y_j</math>, or a vector containing the matrix elements by columns (the way R and FORTRAN store matrices). Its elements should be <i>complex numbers</i>.</p> <p>If the Jacobian is banded, jacfunc should return a matrix containing only the nonzero bands of the Jacobian, rotated row-wise. See first example of lsode.</p>
jactype	<p>the structure of the Jacobian, one of "fullint", "fullusr", "bandusr" or "bandint" - either full or banded and estimated internally or by user; overruled if mf is not NULL.</p>
mf	<p>the "method flag" passed to function zvode - overrules jactype - provides more options than jactype - see details.</p>
verbose	<p>if TRUE: full output to the screen, e.g. will print the diagnostics of the integration - see details.</p>
tcrit	<p>if not NULL, then zvode cannot integrate past tcrit. The FORTRAN routine dode overshoots its targets (times points in the vector times), and interpolates values for the desired time points. If there is a time beyond which integration should not proceed (perhaps because of a singularity), that should be provided in tcrit.</p>
hmin	<p>an optional minimum value of the integration stepsize. In special situations this parameter may speed up computations with the cost of precision. Don't use hmin if you don't know why!</p>
hmax	<p>an optional maximum value of the integration stepsize. If not specified, hmax is set to the largest difference in times, to avoid that the simulation possibly ignores short-term events. If 0, no maximal size is specified.</p>
hini	<p>initial step size to be attempted; if 0, the initial step size is determined by the solver.</p>
yname	<p>logical; if FALSE: names of state variables are not passed to function func ; this may speed up the simulation especially for multi-D models.</p>
maxord	<p>the maximum order to be allowed. NULL uses the default, i.e. order 12 if implicit Adams method (meth = 1), order 5 if BDF method (meth = 2). Reduce maxord to save storage space.</p>
bandup	<p>number of non-zero bands above the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded.</p>
banddown	<p>number of non-zero bands below the diagonal, in case the Jacobian is banded.</p>
maxsteps	<p>maximal number of steps per output interval taken by the solver.</p>
dllname	<p>a string giving the name of the shared library (without extension) that contains all the compiled function or subroutine definitions referred to in func and jacfunc. See package vignette "compiledCode".</p>

<code>initfunc</code>	if not NULL, the name of the initialisation function (which initialises values of parameters), as provided in 'dllname'. See package vignette "compiledCode".
<code>initpar</code>	only when 'dllname' is specified and an initialisation function <code>initfunc</code> is in the dll: the parameters passed to the initialiser, to initialise the common blocks (FORTRAN) or global variables (C, C++).
<code>rpar</code>	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with double precision values passed to the DLL-functions whose names are specified by <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> .
<code>ipar</code>	only when 'dllname' is specified: a vector with integer values passed to the dll-functions whose names are specified by <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> .
<code>nout</code>	only used if <code>dllname</code> is specified and the model is defined in compiled code: the number of output variables calculated in the compiled function <code>func</code> , present in the shared library. Note: it is not automatically checked whether this is indeed the number of output variables calculated in the DLL - you have to perform this check in the code - See package vignette "compiledCode".
<code>outnames</code>	only used if 'dllname' is specified and <code>nout &gt; 0</code> : the names of output variables calculated in the compiled function <code>func</code> , present in the shared library. These names will be used to label the output matrix.
<code>forcings</code>	only used if 'dllname' is specified: a list with the forcing function data sets, each present as a two-columned matrix, with (time,value); interpolation outside the interval $[\min(\text{times}), \max(\text{times})]$ is done by taking the value at the closest data extreme. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
<code>initforc</code>	if not NULL, the name of the forcing function initialisation function, as provided in 'dllname'. It MUST be present if <code>forcings</code> has been given a value. See <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode".
<code>fcontrol</code>	A list of control parameters for the forcing functions. <a href="#">forcings</a> or package vignette "compiledCode"
<code>...</code>	additional arguments passed to <code>func</code> and <code>jacfunc</code> allowing this to be a generic function.

### Details

see [vode](#), the double precision version, for details.

### Value

A matrix of class `deSolve` with up to as many rows as elements in `times` and as many columns as elements in `y` plus the number of "global" values returned in the next elements of the return from `func`, plus an additional column for the time value. There will be a row for each element in `times` unless the FORTRAN routine 'zvode' returns with an unrecoverable error. If `y` has a `names` attribute, it will be used to label the columns of the output value.

### Note

From version 1.10.4, the default of `atol` was changed from  $1e-8$  to  $1e-6$ , to be consistent with the other solvers.

The following text is adapted from the zvode.f source code:

When using zvode for a stiff system, it should only be used for the case in which the function  $f$  is analytic, that is, when each  $f(i)$  is an analytic function of each  $y(j)$ . Analyticity means that the partial derivative  $df(i)/dy(j)$  is a unique complex number, and this fact is critical in the way zvode solves the dense or banded linear systems that arise in the stiff case. For a complex stiff ODE system in which  $f$  is not analytic, zvode is likely to have convergence failures, and for this problem one should instead use ode on the equivalent real system (in the real and imaginary parts of  $y$ ).

### Author(s)

Karline Soetaert <karline.soetaert@nioz.nl>

### References

P. N. Brown, G. D. Byrne, and A. C. Hindmarsh, 1989. VODE: A Variable Coefficient ODE Solver, SIAM J. Sci. Stat. Comput., 10, pp. 1038-1051.

Also, LLNL Report UCRL-98412, June 1988. doi:10.1137/0910062

G. D. Byrne and A. C. Hindmarsh, 1975. A Polyalgorithm for the Numerical Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations. ACM Trans. Math. Software, 1, pp. 71-96. doi:10.1145/355626.355636

A. C. Hindmarsh and G. D. Byrne, 1977. EPISODE: An Effective Package for the Integration of Systems of Ordinary Differential Equations. LLNL Report UCID-30112, Rev. 1.

G. D. Byrne and A. C. Hindmarsh, 1976. EPISODEB: An Experimental Package for the Integration of Systems of Ordinary Differential Equations with Banded Jacobians. LLNL Report UCID-30132, April 1976.

A. C. Hindmarsh, 1983. ODEPACK, a Systematized Collection of ODE Solvers. in Scientific Computing, R. S. Stepleman et al., eds., North-Holland, Amsterdam, pp. 55-64.

K. R. Jackson and R. Sacks-Davis, 1980. An Alternative Implementation of Variable Step-Size Multistep Formulas for Stiff ODEs. ACM Trans. Math. Software, 6, pp. 295-318. doi:10.1145/355900.355903

Netlib: <https://netlib.org>

### See Also

[vode](#) for the double precision version

### Examples

```
## =====
## Example 1 - very simple example
## df/dt = 1i*f, where 1i is the imaginary unit
## The initial value is f(0) = 1 = 1+0i
## =====

ZODE <- function(Time, f, Pars) {
  df <- 1i*f
  return(list(df))
}
```

```

pars    <- NULL
yini    <- c(f = 1+0i)
times   <- seq(0, 2*pi, length = 100)
out     <- zvode(func = ZODE, y = yini, parms = pars, times = times,
  atol = 1e-10, rtol = 1e-10)

# The analytical solution to this ODE is the exp-function:
# f(t) = exp(1i*t)
#      = cos(t)+1i*sin(t) (due to Euler's equation)

analytical.solution <- exp(1i * times)

## compare numerical and analytical solution
tail(cbind(out[,2], analytical.solution))

## =====
## Example 2 - example in "zvode.f",
## df/dt = 1i*f      (same as above ODE)
## dg/dt = -1i*g*g*f (an additional ODE depending on f)
##
## Initial values are
## g(0) = 1/2.1 and
## z(0) = 1
## =====

ZODE2<-function(Time,State,Pars) {
  with(as.list(State), {
    df <- 1i * f
    dg <- -1i * g*g * f
    return(list(c(df, dg)))
  })
}

yini    <- c(f = 1 + 0i, g = 1/2.1 + 0i)
times   <- seq(0, 2*pi, length = 100)
out     <- zvode(func = ZODE2, y = yini, parms = NULL, times = times,
  atol = 1e-10, rtol = 1e-10)

## The analytical solution is
## f(t) = exp(1i*t) (same as above)
## g(t) = 1/(f(t) + 1.1)

analytical <- cbind(f = exp(1i * times), g = 1/(exp(1i * times) + 1.1))

## compare numerical solution and the two analytical ones:
tail(cbind(out[,2], analytical[,1]))

```

# Index

- \* **datasets**
  - ccl4data, 8
- \* **hplot**
  - plot.deSolve, 97
- \* **math**
  - checkDLL, 12
  - daspk, 15
  - lsoda, 43
  - lsodar, 50
  - lsode, 57
  - lsodes, 64
  - ode, 73
  - ode.1D, 78
  - ode.2D, 84
  - ode.3D, 90
  - ode.band, 94
  - radau, 103
  - rk, 110
  - rk4, 116
  - rkMethod, 120
  - vode, 130
  - zvode, 137
- \* **misc**
  - cleanEventTimes, 13
- \* **models**
  - aquaphy, 5
  - ccl4model, 9
  - SCOC, 124
- \* **package**
  - deSolve-package, 3
- \* **utilities**
  - dede, 25
  - diagnostics, 29
  - diagnostics.deSolve, 29
  - DLLfunc, 30
  - DLLres, 33
  - events, 35
  - forcings, 40
  - timelags, 126
  - .C, 15, 43, 111
  - .Call, 15, 43, 111
  - .Fortran, 43, 111
  - approx, 42
  - approxfun, 40–42
  - aquaphy, 5, 10, 75, 125
  - ccl4data, 8, 10
  - ccl4model, 6, 9, 36, 75, 125
  - checkDLL, 12, 44
  - cleanEventTimes, 13, 35
  - daspk, 4, 15, 34, 48, 55, 62, 69, 75, 108, 114, 118, 135
  - dede, 4, 19, 25, 46, 53, 60, 67, 75, 106, 119, 127, 132
  - deSolve, 100
  - deSolve (deSolve-package), 3
  - deSolve-package, 3
  - dev.interactive, 98
  - diagnostics, 20, 21, 29, 47, 48, 54, 55, 61, 62, 68, 69, 75, 81, 86, 92, 95, 107, 108, 114, 119, 133, 135
  - diagnostics.deSolve, 29, 29
  - DLLfunc, 4, 30
  - DLLres, 4, 33
  - euler, 4, 21, 48, 55, 62, 69, 114, 135
  - euler (rk4), 116
  - events, 4, 14, 19, 35, 42, 46, 51, 53, 57, 60, 67, 75, 106, 113, 132
  - FME, 3
  - forcings, 4, 18–20, 36, 40, 46, 47, 53, 54, 60, 61, 67, 68, 75, 106, 107, 113, 118, 132, 134, 139
  - gnls, 47
  - hist, 99, 100

- hist.deSolve (plot.deSolve), 97
- image, 99, 100
- image.deSolve (plot.deSolve), 97
- lagderiv, 4, 26
- lagderiv (timelags), 126
- lagvalue, 4, 26
- lagvalue (timelags), 126
- legend, 99
- lsoda, 4, 13, 19, 21, 25, 36, 43, 50, 54, 55, 57, 61, 62, 68, 69, 73–75, 81, 95, 114, 118, 130, 133, 135
- lsodar, 4, 21, 36, 48, 50, 62, 69, 75, 81, 95, 114, 118, 135
- lsode, 4, 21, 36, 45, 48, 52, 55, 57, 58, 69, 75, 81, 95, 114, 118, 130, 131, 133, 135
- lsodes, 4, 21, 36, 48, 55, 62, 64, 75, 81, 85, 86, 92, 114, 118, 135
- matplot, 100
- matplot.0D (plot.deSolve), 97
- matplot.1D (plot.deSolve), 97
- matplot.deSolve (plot.deSolve), 97
- nearestEvent (cleanEventTimes), 13
- nlm, 3, 43, 111
- nlme, 3, 43, 111
- nls, 3, 43, 111
- ode, 4, 21, 32, 48, 55, 62, 69, 72, 81, 86, 92, 95, 100, 108, 114, 118, 120, 123, 135
- ode.1D, 4, 21, 48, 55, 62, 69, 75, 78, 86, 92, 95, 99, 108, 114, 118, 119, 135
- ode.2D, 4, 21, 48, 55, 62, 69, 75, 81, 84, 92, 95, 99, 100, 108, 114, 119, 135
- ode.3D, 4, 21, 48, 55, 62, 69, 75, 81, 86, 90, 95, 108, 114, 119, 135
- ode.band, 4, 21, 48, 55, 62, 69, 75, 80, 81, 86, 92, 94, 114, 119, 135
- optim, 3, 43, 111
- par, 98
- plot, 100
- plot.1D, 118
- plot.1D (plot.deSolve), 97
- plot.default, 99
- plot.deSolve, 75, 97
- print.deSolve, 100
- print.deSolve (ode), 73
- radau, 4, 16, 20, 21, 36, 75, 103, 114, 122
- rk, 4, 21, 48, 55, 62, 69, 75, 110, 118, 120, 123, 135
- rk4, 4, 21, 48, 55, 62, 69, 114, 116, 135
- rkMethod, 4, 48, 55, 73, 75, 112–114, 118, 120
- roots, 55
- roots (events), 35
- SCOC, 124
- subset.deSolve (plot.deSolve), 97
- summary.deSolve (ode), 73
- timelags, 19, 46, 53, 60, 67, 106, 126, 132
- vode, 4, 21, 48, 55, 57, 62, 69, 75, 81, 95, 114, 118, 130, 139, 140
- zvode, 136